Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

Raymond Murphy
Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org
Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher ix

Present
1 am/is/are
2 am/is/are (questions)
3 I am doing (present continuous)
4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
6 I don’t … (present simple negative)
7 Do you … ? (present simple questions)
8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
9 I have … and I’ve got …

Past
10 was/were
11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
12 I didn’t … Did you … ? (past simple negative and questions)
13 I was doing (past continuous)
14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

Present perfect
15 I have done (present perfect 1)
16 I’ve just … I’ve already … I haven’t … yet (present perfect 2)
17 Have you ever … ? (present perfect 3)
18 How long have you … ? (present perfect 4)
19 for since ago
20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

Passive
21 is done was done (passive 1)
22 is being done has been done (passive 2)

Verb forms
23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
25 What are you doing tomorrow?
26 I’m going to …
27 will/shall 1
28 will/shall 2

Modals, imperative etc.
29 might
30 can and could
31 must mustn’t don’t need to

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271
should
I have to ...
Would you like ... ? I'd like ...
Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!
I used to ...

There and it
there is there are
there was/were there has/have been there will be
It ...

Auxiliary verbs
I am, I don't etc.
Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.
too/either so am I / neither do I etc.
Isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

Questions
is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)
Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ? (questions 4)
How long does it take ... ?
Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ... etc.

Reported speech
She said that ... He told me that ...

-ing and to ...
work/working go/going do/doing
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
I want you to ... I told you to ...
I went to the shop to ...

Go, get, do, make and have
go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing
get
do and make
have

Pronouns and possessives
me he/him they/them etc.
my/his/their etc.
Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.
my/me/my/mine
myself/yourself/themselves etc.
's (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)
A and the
65 a/an ...
66 train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
67 a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)
68 a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)
69 a/an and the
70 the ...
71 go to work go home go to the cinema
72 I like music I hate exams
73 the ... (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns
74 this/that/these/those
75 one/ones
76 some and any
77 not + any no none
78 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
79 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
80 every and all
81 all most some any no none
82 both either neither
83 a lot much many
84 (a) little (a) few

Adjectives and adverbs
85 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
86 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
87 old/older expensive / more expensive
88 older than ... more expensive than ...
89 not as ... as
90 the oldest the most expensive
91 enough
92 too

Word order
93 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
94 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
95 still yet already
96 Give me that book! Give it to me!

Conjunctions and clauses
97 and but or so because
98 When ...
99 If we go ... If you see ... etc.
100 If I had ... If we went ... etc.
101 a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
102 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)
Prepositions

at 8 o’clock on Monday in April
from ... to until since for
before after during while
in at on (places 1)
in at on (places 2)
to in at (places 3)
under, behind, opposite etc.
up, over, through etc.
on at by with about
afraid of ... good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing
listen to ... look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs

go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices

Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (he’s / I’d / don’t etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283
Key to Additional exercises 310
Key to Study guide 313

Index 315
Thanks

For their help in producing this third edition of Essential Grammar in Use, I would like to thank Liz Driscoll, Jessica Roberts and Alison Sharpe. I would also like to thank the teachers and reviewers from various countries who provided me with feedback on the previous edition.

Illustrations by Kate Charlesworth, Richard Deverell, Gillian Martin, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Ian West and Simon Williams

Design by Kamae Design
This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (I have been, he has done etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the Contents or the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide at the back of the book.
Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.
Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on pages 283–309.
Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don't forget the seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.

CD Rom
You can buy this book with or without a CD Rom. On the CD Rom there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.
To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book
There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are not ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should not be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the Contents and there is a comprehensive Index at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven Appendices (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of Additional exercises (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a Study guide to help students decide which units to study - see page 271.

Finally, there is a Key (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the Study guide and Key is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level
The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book
The book can be used by students working alone (see To the student) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.
In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

**CD Rom**

The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. This contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests. The CD Rom is also available separately.

---

**Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition**

This is a new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- The book has been redesigned with new colour illustrations.
- There is one new unit (Unit 35) and some reorganisation, so that most units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples and exercises.
- There are two new pages of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270).
- There is a new *Study guide* at the back of the book to help users decide which units to study.
- There is a new CD Rom with further exercises to accompany the book.
My name is Lisa. I'm 22. I'm not married.

I'm American. I'm from Chicago.

My favourite colour is blue.

I'm a student.

My favourite sports are football and swimming.

My father is a doctor and my mother is a journalist.

LISA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am (I'm)</td>
<td>I am not (I'm not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is (he's)</td>
<td>(he's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is (she's)</td>
<td>(she's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is (it's)</td>
<td>(it's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are (we're)</td>
<td>(we're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are (you're)</td>
<td>(you're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are (they're)</td>
<td>(they're not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

short form

I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
Steve is ill. He's in bed.
My brother is afraid of dogs.
It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
Ann and I are good friends.
Your keys are on the table.
I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
Jane isn't a teacher. She's a student.
Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

that's = that is
there's = there is
here's = here is

Thank you. That's very kind of you.
Look! There's Chris.
'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'
1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).

1. she is ___________________________ 3. it is not ___________________________
2. they are ___________________________ 4. that is ___________________________
5. I am not ___________________________

1.2 Write am, is or are.

1. The weather __________ nice today. 5. Look! There _______ Carol.
2. I __________ not rich. 6. My brother and I __________ good tennis players.
3. This bag __________ heavy. 7. Emily __________ at home. Her children __________ at school.
4. These bags __________ heavy. 8. I __________ a taxi driver. My sister __________ a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

1. Steve is ill. __________ in bed.
2. I'm not hungry, but __________ thirsty.
3. Mr Thomas is a very old man. __________ 98.
4. These chairs aren't beautiful, but __________ comfortable.
5. The weather is nice today. __________ warm and sunny.
6. __________ late.' ‘No, I'm not. I'm early!' 
7. Catherine isn't at home. __________ at work.
8. ' __________ your coat,' ‘Oh, thank you very much.'

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

1. (name?) My ___________________________ 5. (favourite colour or colours?)
2. (from?) I ___________________________ 6. (interested in ... ?)
3. (age?) I ___________________________ 7. I ___________________________
4. (job?) I ___________________________ 8. I ___________________________

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty

1. She's thirsty. 3. He ___________________________ 5. ___________________________
2. They ___________________________ 4. ___________________________ 6. ___________________________

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/ isn't or are/ aren't.

1. (it / hot today) It isn't hot today.... or It's hot today....
2. (it / windy today) It ___________________________
3. (my hands / cold) My ___________________________
4. (Brazil / a very big country) ___________________________
5. (diamonds / cheap) ___________________________
6. (Toronto / in the US) ___________________________

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I'm / I'm not.

7. (tired) ___________________________
8. (hungry) ___________________________
9. (a good swimmer) ___________________________
10. (interested in football) ___________________________

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 252)
am/is/are (questions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>am I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>is he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is</td>
<td>is she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is</td>
<td>is it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are</td>
<td>are we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are</td>
<td>are they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they're out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:
- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not Are new your shoes?)

Where ...? / What ...? / Who ...? / How ...? / Why ...?

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- 'Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It's red.'
- 'How old is Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- These postcards are nice. How much are they?
- This hotel isn't very good. Why is it so expensive?

What's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is
- What's the time?
- Who's that man?
- Where's Lucy?
- How's your father?

short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>not.</th>
<th>isn't.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>he's</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>she's</td>
<td>she's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it's</td>
<td>it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>we're</td>
<td>we're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you're</td>
<td>you're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they're</td>
<td>they're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not. but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'That's my seat.' 'No, it isn't.'
Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Where's the camera?</td>
<td>A London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Is your car blue?</td>
<td>B No, I'm not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Is Linda from London?</td>
<td>C Yes, you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Am I late?</td>
<td>D My sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Where's Ann from?</td>
<td>E Black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 What colour is your bag?</td>
<td>F No, it's black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Are you hungry?</td>
<td>G In your bag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 How is George?</td>
<td>H No, she's American.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Who's that woman?</td>
<td>I Very well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1 (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home?
2 (your parents / are / well) Are your parents well?
3 (interesting / is / your job) Is your job interesting?
4 (the shops / are / open today) Are the shops open today?
5 (from / where / you / are) From where are you?
6 (interested in sport / you / are) Are you interested in sport?
7 (is / near here / the post office) Is the post office near here?
8 (at school / are / your children) Are your children at school?
9 (you / are / late / why) Why are you late?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ...

1 How are your parents?
2 How is the bus stop?
3 How are your children?
4 How are these oranges?
5 How is your favourite sport?
6 How is the man in this photograph?
7 How are your new shoes?

2.4 Write the questions.

1 What's your name? (name?)
2 What's your name? (American?)
3 What's your name? (how old?)
4 What's your name? (a teacher?)
5 What's your name? (married?)
6 What's your name? (wife a lawyer?)
7 What's your name? (from?)
8 What's your name? (her name?)
9 What's your name? (how old?)

2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am / No, he isn't etc.).

1 Are you married? No, I'm not.
2 Are you thirsty? No.
3 Is it cold today? Yes.
4 Are your hands cold? Yes, they are.
5 Is it dark now? Yes.
6 Are you a teacher? Yes, I am.

→ Additional exercises 1-2 (pages 252-53)
I am doing (present continuous)

She's eating.
She isn't reading.

It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.

They're running.
They aren't walking.

The present continuous is:
am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am (not)</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>is (not)</th>
<th>I'm working. I'm not watching TV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>Maria is reading a newspaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>The phone is ringing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>We're having dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening ...)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The children are doing their homework.

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:

I'm working
she's wearing a hat
they're playing football
I'm not watching television

past                     now                     future

Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
Look, there's Sarah. She's wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
The weather is nice. It's not raining.
'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the park.'
(on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can I phone you later?
You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
come → coming  write → writing  dance → dancing
run → running  sit → sitting  swim → swimming
lie → lying

am/is/are → Unit 1  are you doing? (questions) → Unit 4  I am doing and I do → Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25
3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

- eat  have  lie  play  sit  wait

1. She's eating an apple.
2. He is waiting for a bus.
3. They are playing football.
4. He is sitting on the floor.
5. She is having breakfast.
6. They are sitting on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

- build  cook  go  have  stand  stay  swim  work

1. Please be quiet. I'm working.
2. 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He's cooking.'
3. 'You're on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
4. Look! Somebody is swimming in the river.
5. We're here on holiday. We're staying at the Central Hotel.
6. 'Where's Sue?' 'She's having a shower.'
7. They're building a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
8. I'm working now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing.

1. (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner.
2. (watch television) She's watching television.
3. (sit on the floor) She is sitting on the floor.
5. (play the piano) She isn't playing the piano.
6. (laugh) She is laughing.
7. (wear a hat) She's wearing a hat.
8. (write a letter) She is writing a letter.

Jane

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair.
2. (it / snow) It's snowing... or It isn't snowing.
3. (I / sit / on a chair) I'm sitting on a chair.
4. (I / eat) I'm eating.
5. (it / rain) It's raining.
6. (I / learn / English) I'm learning English.
7. (I / listen / to music) I'm listening to music.
8. (the sun / shine) The sun is shining.
9. (I / wear / shoes) I'm wearing shoes.
10. (I / read / a newspaper) I'm reading a newspaper.
**Unit 4**

### What are you doing? (present continuous questions)

#### Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>doing</th>
<th>working</th>
<th>going</th>
<th>staying</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>doing?</th>
<th>working?</th>
<th>going?</th>
<th>staying?</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

- ‘Are you feeling OK?’ ‘Yes, I’m fine, thanks.’
- ‘Is it raining?’ ‘Yes, take an umbrella.’
- Why are you wearing a coat? It’s not cold.
- ‘What’s Paul doing?’ ‘He’s reading the newspaper.’
- ‘What are the children doing?’ ‘They’re watching television.’
- Look, there’s Emily! Where’s she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

#### Study the word order:

**is/are + subject + -ing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>working today?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>working today? (not Is working Paul today?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are they going?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are those people going? (not Where are going those people?)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>am.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Yes,**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I’m</th>
<th>he’s</th>
<th>she’s</th>
<th>it’s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No, not.</td>
<td>we’re</td>
<td>you’re</td>
<td>they’re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**No,**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he</th>
<th>isn’t.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Are you going now?’ ‘Yes, I am.’
- ‘Is Paul working today?’ ‘Yes, he is.’
- ‘Is it raining?’ ‘No, it isn’t.’
- ‘Are your friends staying at a hotel?’ ‘No, they aren’t. They’re staying with me.’

---

I am doing → Unit 3  
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25  
questions → Units 44–47
4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1. (you / watch / it?) Are you watching it?
   - No, you can turn it off.
2. (you / go / now?) ______________________
   - Yes, see you tomorrow.
3. (it / rain?) ______________________
   - No, not at the moment.
4. (you / enjoy / the film?) ______________________
   - Yes, it's very funny.
5. (that clock / work?) ______________________
   - No, it's broken.
6. (you / wait / for a bus?) ______________________
   - No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at read

1. What are you reading?
2. Where is she?
3. What is she reading?
4. Why?
5. What is she doing?
6. Why?

4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Paul / today) Is Paul working today?
2. (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing?
3. (you / are / listening / to me) ______________________
4. (where / your friends / are / going) ______________________
5. (are / watching / your parents / television) ______________________
6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ______________________
7. (why / you / are / looking / at me) ______________________
8. (is / coming / the bus) ______________________

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't, etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? ______________________
   - No, I'm not.
2. Are you wearing a watch? ______________________
   - ______________________
3. Are you eating something? ______________________
   - ______________________
4. Is it raining? ______________________
   - ______________________
5. Are you sitting on the floor? ______________________
   - ______________________
6. Are you feeling well? ______________________
   - ______________________

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 253)
They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1/we/you/they</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>likes</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:
- he works / she lives / it rains etc.
- I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not My brother work)
- It rains a lot in winter.

I have → he/she/it has:
- I have a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
- -es after -s / -sh / -ch: pass → passes finish → finishes watch → watches
- -y → -ies: study → studies try → tries
- also: do → does go → goes

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
- I like big cities.
- Your English is good. You speak very well.
- Tim works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o’clock in the evening.
- The earth goes round the sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- It costs a lot of money to build a hospital.

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple
- Sue always gets to work early. (not Sue gets always)
- I never eat breakfast. (not I eat never)
- We often go away at weekends.
- Mark usually plays football on Sundays.
- I sometimes walk to work, but not very often.
Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.

1 (read) she reads
2 (think) he thinks
3 (fly) it flies
4 (dance) he dances
5 (have) she has
6 (finish) it finishes

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

eat  go  live  play  play  sleep

1 He plays the piano.
2 They go to the cinema a lot.
3 They live in a very big house.
4 They sleep a lot of fruit.
5 They eat to the cinema a lot.
6 They sleep seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

boil  close  cost  cost  like  like  meet  open  speak  teach  wash

1 Maria speaks four languages.
2 The shops in the city centre usually cost a lot of money.
3 The City Museum is at 5 o'clock in the evening.
4 Tina is a teacher. She speaks mathematics to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I meet a lot of people.
6 Peter's car is always dirty. He never washes it.
7 Food is expensive. It costs a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They cost a lot of money.
9 Water boils at 100 degrees Celcius.
10 Julia and I are good friends. I meet her and she washes me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).

1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I never go to the cinema.
3 (work / Martina / hard / always) Martina always works hard.
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) Children usually like chocolate.
5 (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia always enjoys parties.
6 (often / people's names / I / forget) I often forget people's names.
7 (television / Tim / watch / never) Tim never watches television.
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) We usually have dinner at 7.30.
9 (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

1 (watch TV in the evening) I usually watch TV in the evening.
2 (read in bed) I read in bed.
3 (get up before 7 o'clock) I get up before 7 o'clock.
4 (go to work/school by bus) I go to work/school by bus.
5 (drink coffee in the morning) I drink coffee in the morning.
The present simple negative is **don’t/doesn’t + verb**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they <strong>work like do have</strong></td>
<td>I/we/you/they <strong>don’t (do not)</strong> <strong>work like do have</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it <strong>works likes does has</strong></td>
<td>he/she/it <strong>doesn’t (does not)</strong> <strong>work like do have</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee, but I don’t drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn’t drink coffee.
- You don’t work very hard.
- We don’t watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn’t rain very often.
- Gary and Nicole don’t know many people.

Remember:

- I/we/you/they **don’t ...**  
  - **don’t like**  
  - **don’t have**

- **He/She/It **doesn’t ...**  
  - **doesn’t like**  
  - **doesn’t have**

We use **don’t/doesn’t + infinitive** (don’t like / doesn’t speak / doesn’t do etc.):

- I don’t like washing the car. I don’t do it very often.
- Sarah speaks Spanish, but she doesn’t speak Italian. (not doesn’t speak)
- Bill doesn’t do his job very well. (not Bill doesn’t his job)
- Paula doesn’t usually have breakfast. (not doesn’t ... has)
Exercises

Unit 6

6.1 Write the negative.
1 I play the piano very well.
   I don't play the piano very well.
2 Jane plays the piano very well.
   Jane writes the negative.
3 They know my phone number.
   They write the negative.
4 We work very hard.
5 He has a bath every day.
6 You do the same thing every day.

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Ben</th>
<th>Sophie</th>
<th>Kate</th>
<th>You</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>music?</td>
<td>classical</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>boxing?</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>horror films?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:
I never ... or I often ... or I don't ... very often.

1 (watch TV) I don't watch TV very often...
2 (go to the theatre) I often watch TV...
3 (ride a bicycle) 
4 (eat in restaurants) 
5 (travel by train) 

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/don'ts + these verbs:
cost, go, know, read, see, use, wear

1 I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I don't read it.
2 Paul has a car, but he doesn't use it very often.
3 Paul and his friends like films, but they don't go to the cinema very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she doesn't wear a ring.
5 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It doesn't cost much to stay there.
7 Brian lives very near us, but we don't see him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.
1 Margaret speaks four languages - English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2 I don't like my job. It's very boring. (like)
3 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I don't know.' (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She talks very much. (talk)
5 Andy drinks a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
6 It's not true! I don't believe it. (believe)
7 That's a very beautiful picture. I like it very much. (like)
8 Mark is a vegetarian. He eats meat. (eat)
We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

**positive**
- I work
- we like
- do have
- you they
- he she it
- works
- likes
- does has

**question**
- I do
- we you they
- he she it
- work?
- like?
- do?
- have?

Study the word order:

**do/does** + **subject** + **infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>Do you friends work on Sundays?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How often</td>
<td>Does Chris live near here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much</td>
<td>Do you play tennis?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>Does your parents live?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do you have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>does this word mean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>does it cost to fly to Rome?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions with **always/usually/often**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Do you always have breakfast?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you usually do at weekends?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does he/she/it have phone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does he/she/it do?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What **do you do?** = What’s your job?

- ‘What do you do?’  ‘I work in a bank.’

Remember:

- do **I/we/you/they** ...
- does **he/she/it** ...

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I/we/you/they <strong>do</strong>.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>I/we/you/they <strong>don’t</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Do you play tennis?’  ‘No, I don’t.’
- ‘Do your parents speak English?’  ‘Yes, they do.’
- ‘Does Gary work hard?’  ‘Yes, he does.’
- ‘Does your sister live in London?’  ‘No, she doesn’t.’
7.1 Write questions with Do ... ? and Does ... ?

1. I like chocolate. How about you?
2. I play tennis. How about you?
3. You live near here. How about Lucy?
4. Tom plays tennis. How about his friends?
5. You speak English. How about your brother?
6. I do yoga every morning. How about you?
7. Sue often goes away. How about Paul?
8. I want to be famous. How about you?
9. You work hard. How about Anna?

7.2 Make questions from these words + do/does. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents; Where do your parents live?)
2. (you / early / always / get up; Do you always get up early?)
3. (how often / TV / you / watch; How often do you watch TV?)
4. (you / want / what / for dinner; What do you want for dinner?)
5. (like / you / football; Do you like football?)
6. (your brother / like / football; Does your brother like football?)
7. (what / you / do / in your free time; What do you do in your free time?)
8. (your sister / work / where; Where does your sister work?)
9. (to the cinema / often / you / go; How often do you go to the cinema?)
10. (what / mean / this word; What does this word mean?)
11. (often / snow / it / here; Does it often snow here?)
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you; What time do you usually go to bed?)
13. (how much / to phone New York / it / cost; How much does it cost to phone New York?)
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what; What do you usually have for breakfast?)

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go like start teach work

1. What _ do you do_ ?
2. What time _ go_ to work?
3. What time _ start_ in the morning?
4. How _ _ go_ on Saturdays?
5. And your husband. What _ _ _ do_ ?
6. What _ _ _ _ his job?
7. What _ _ _ _ _ you do_ ?

7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don’t. etc.).

1. Do you watch TV a lot?
2. Do you live in a big city?
3. Do you often ride a bicycle?
4. Does it rain a lot where you live?
5. Do you play the piano?

Additional exercises 4-7 (pages 253-54)
I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

Jack is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack plays the guitar,
but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn’t. (present continuous)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (present simple)

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking:

I’m doing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Please be quiet. I’m working. (not I work)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom is having a shower at the moment. (not Tom has)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take an umbrella with you. It’s raining.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why are you under the table? What are you doing?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present simple (I do) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work every day from 9 o’clock to 5.30.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom has a shower every morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It rains a lot in winter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t watch television very often.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you usually do at the weekend?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like   love   want   know   understand   remember   depend
prefer  hate   need   mean   believe   forget

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

I’m tired. I want to go home. (not I’m wanting)
‘Do you know that girl?’ ‘Yes, but I don’t remember her name.’
I don’t understand. What do you mean?

present continuous → Units 3–4  present simple → Units 5–7  present for the future → Unit 25
8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1. I'm a photographer.
   - Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.
   - Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
   - What is he doing? He's having a bath.

2. I'm a bus driver.
   - Is she driving a bus? Yes, she is.
   - Does she drive a bus? Yes, she does.
   - What is she doing? She's driving.

3. I'm a window cleaner.
   - Does he clean windows? Yes, he does.
   - Is he cleaning a window? Yes, he is.
   - What is he doing? He's cleaning a window.

4. We are teachers.
   - Are they teaching? Yes, they are.
   - Do they teach? Yes, they do.
   - What do they do? They teach.

8.2 Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don’t/does/doesn’t.

1. Excuse me, do you speak English?
2. Where's Kate? I don't know.
3. What's funny? Why are you laughing?
4. What is your sister doing? She's a dentist.
5. It's raining. I want to go out in the rain.
6. Where are you from? Canada.
7. How much does it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8. Steve is a good tennis player, but he doesn't play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).

1. Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
2. 'Where's Tom?' He's having (he/have) a shower.
3. I don’t watch (I/not/watch) television very often.
4. Listen! Somebody is singing (sing).
5. Sandra is tired. (she/want) to go home now.
6. How often do you (you/read) a newspaper?
7. 'Excuse me, but (you/sit) in my place.' Oh, I'm sorry.
8. I'm sorry, (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9. It's late. (I/go) home now.
10. What time do you (your father / finish) work every day?
11. You can turn off the radio. (I/not/listen) to it.
12. 'Where's Paul?' "In the kitchen. (he/cook) something.'
13. Martin is walking (not/usually/drive) to work. He's usually driving.
14. Sue is drinking (not/like) coffee. (she/like) tea.
I have ... and I've got ...

You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have or have got</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have or have got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>(he's got)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(she's got)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(it's got)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>short form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I have blue eyes. or I've got blue eyes.
- Tim has two sisters. or Tim has got two sisters.
- Our car has four doors. or Our car has got four doors.
- Sarah isn't feeling well. She has a headache. or She's got a headache.
- They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs and six cats. or They've got a horse ...

I haven't got / have you got? etc.

**negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have not (haven't)</th>
<th>got</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have not (haven't)</th>
<th>got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**question**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have got?</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have got?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>have, haven't.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I've got a motorbike, but I haven't got a car.
- Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Helen got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ...:
- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house, but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Helen have a car? (= Has Helen got a car?)
- What do you have in your bag? (= What have you got in your bag?)

had / didn't have (past) -> Units 11-12 have breakfast / have a shower etc. -> Unit 58 some/any -> Unit 76
Exercises

9.1 Write the short form with got (we've got / he hasn't got etc.).

1. we have got ________
   3. they have got ________
   5. it has got ________
2. he has got ________
   4. she has not got ________
   6. I have not got ________

9.2 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

Have you got a car?
No.
Yes.

Have you got a computer?
He hasn't got a computer.

Have you got a dog?
No.

Have you got a mobile phone?
Yes.

Have you got a watch?
Yes, two brothers and a sister.

Have you got any brothers or sisters?

What about you? Write sentences with I've got or I haven't got.

7. (a computer)
8. (a dog)
9. (a bike)
10. (brothers/sisters)

9.3 Write these sentences with got (I've got / have you got etc.). The meaning is the same.

1. They have two children.
2. She doesn't have a key.
3. He has a new job.
4. They don't have much money.
5. Do you have an umbrella?
6. We have a lot of work to do.
7. I don't have your phone number.
8. Does your father have a car?
9. How much money do we have?

9.4 Write have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.

1. Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They've got three dogs and two cats.
3. Charles isn't happy. He has got a lot of problems.
4. They don't read much. They haven't got many books.
5. 'What's wrong?' 'I've got something in my eye.'
6. 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I haven't got it.'
7. Julia wants to go to the concert, but she hasn't got a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven't/hasn't got with:

a lot of friends  four wheels  a headache  six legs
a garden  much time  a key

1. I'm not feeling well. I've got a headache.
2. It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
3. Most cars ________
4. Everybody likes Tom. He ________
5. I can't open the door. I ________
6. An insect ________
7. We must hurry. We ________

Additional exercises 5-7 (page 254)
was/were

am/is (present) → was (past):
- I am tired. (now)
- Where is Kate? (now)
- The weather is good today

are (present) → were (past):
- You are late. (now)
- They aren't here. (now)

I was tired last night.
Where was Kate yesterday?
The weather was good last week.

You were late yesterday.
They weren't here last Sunday.

Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
We were hungry after the journey, but we weren't tired.
The hotel was comfortable, but it wasn't expensive.

Was the weather nice when you were on holiday?
Your shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
Why were you late this morning?

Short answers

Yes, 1/he/she/it was,
we/you/they were.
No, 1/he/she/it wasn't.
we/you/they weren't.

'Were you late?' 'No, I wasn't.'
'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he was.'
'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'
Exercises

Unit 10

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?

1 Gary was in bed.
2 Jack and Kate were in a train.
3 Sue was at the office.
4 Mr. and Mrs. Hall were at the cinema.
5 Ben was on the beach.
6 And you? I was at home.

10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

1 Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2 Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it was very cold.
3 I am hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning, but I was very tired last night.
5 Where were you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6 Don't buy those shoes. They are expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. It is expensive?
8 This time last year I was in Paris.
9 ‘Where are the children?’ ‘I don’t know. They were here a few minutes ago.’

10.3 Write was/were or wasn’t/weren’t.

1 We weren’t happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn’t clean.
2 Mark was at work last week because he was ill. He’s better now.
3 Yesterday was a public holiday, so the banks were closed. They’re open today.
4 ‘Where was Kate and Bill at the party?’ ‘Kate was there, but Bill wasn’t.’
5 ‘Where are my keys?’ ‘I don’t know. They were on the table, but they’re not there now.’
6 You were at home last night. Where were you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.

1 Why were you late this morning?
2 Why were you late this morning?
3 Why were you late this morning?
4 Why were you late this morning?
5 Why were you late this morning?
6 Why were you late this morning?

- The traffic was bad.
- No, it was easy.
- They were on holiday.
- Sixty pounds.
- Because you were late.
- Yes, it was beautiful.
They watch television every evening. (present simple)

They watched television yesterday evening. (past simple)

watched is the past simple:

I/we/you/they he/she/it watched

The past simple is often -ed (regular verbs). For example:

work → worked dance → danced

They worked in a bank from 1996 to 2003.

They went to the cinema three times last week.

Some verbs are irregular (= not regular). The past simple is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2-3):

begin → began break → broke bring → brought build → built buy → bought catch → caught come → came do → did drink → drank eat → ate

fall → fell find → found fly → flew forget → forgot get → got give → gave go → went have → had hear → heard know → knew

leave → left lose → lost make → made meet → met pay → paid put → put read → read (red)* ring → rang say → said see → saw

sell → sold sit → sat sleep → slept speak → spoke stand → stood take → took tell → told think → thought win → won write → wrote

Some verbs are irregular (= not regular). The past simple is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2-3):

try → tried study → studied copy → copied stop → stopped plan → planned

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

They danced a lot and talked to a lot of people. The party finished at midnight.

*I pronounced 'red'!
Exercises  

Unit 11

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

- clean  - die  - enjoy  - finish  - happen  - open  - rain  - start  - stay  - want

1 I __________ my teeth three times yesterday.
2 It was hot in the room, so I __________ the window.
3 The film was very long. It __________ at 7.15 and __________ at 10 o'clock.
4 When I was a child, I __________ to be a doctor.
5 The accident __________ last Sunday afternoon.
6 It's a nice day today, but yesterday it __________ all day.
7 We __________ our holiday last year. We __________ at a very nice place.
8 Anna's grandfather __________ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1 get __________  4 pay __________  7 go __________  10 know __________
2 see __________  5 visit __________  8 think __________  11 put __________
3 play __________  6 buy __________  9 copy __________  12 speak __________

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Last Tuesday Lisa __________ from London to Madrid. She __________ up at 6 o'clock in the morning and __________ a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she __________ home and __________ to the airport. When she __________ there, she __________ the car, __________ to the airport building, and __________ in. Then she __________ breakfast at a café and __________ for her flight. The plane __________ on time and __________ in Madrid two hours later. Finally she __________ a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday __________
2 Rachel often loses her keys. She ____________ last week.
3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She ____________ yesterday evening.
4 I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday __________
5 We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we __________
6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday __________
7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning __________
8 Our friends often come to see us. They ____________ last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1 I __________
2 __________
3 __________

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 256)
I didn’t ... Did you ... ?  
(past simple negative and questions)

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>I played</td>
<td>I did not (didn’t)</td>
<td>play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>started</td>
<td></td>
<td>start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>watched</td>
<td></td>
<td>watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td></td>
<td>see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td></td>
<td>do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
<td>go?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**do/does (present) → did (past):**

- I don’t watch television very often.
  I didn’t watch television yesterday.
- Does she often go away?  
  Did she go away last week?

We use **did/didn’t + infinitive** (watch/play/go etc.):  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I watched</th>
<th>but</th>
<th>I didn’t watch</th>
<th>(not I didn’t watch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>they went</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>they go?</td>
<td>(not did they went?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he had</td>
<td>he didn’t have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you do?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I played tennis yesterday, but I didn’t win.
- ‘Did you do the shopping?’  ‘No, I didn’t have time.’
- We went to the cinema, but we didn’t enjoy the film.

Study the word order in questions:

**did + subject + infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Did</th>
<th>your sister</th>
<th>phone</th>
<th>you?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>last night?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>the accident</td>
<td>happen?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>your parents</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>for their holiday?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

Yes, I/we/you/they he/she/it **did**.  
No, I/we/you/they he/she/it **didn’t**.

- ‘Did you see Joe yesterday?’  ‘No, I didn’t.’
- ‘Did it rain on Sunday?’  ‘Yes, it did.’
- ‘Did Helen come to the party?’  ‘No, she didn’t.’
- ‘Did your parents have a good holiday?’  ‘Yes, they did.’

**worked/got/went etc. (past simple) → Unit 11**
12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1. I saw Barbara, but I saw Jane.
2. They worked on Monday, but they on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she any paper.
5. Jack did French at school, but he German.

12.2 Write questions with Did ...?

1. I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night?
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? Did you enjoy the party?
3. I had a good holiday. How about you? Did you have a good holiday?
4. I finished work early. How about you? Did you finish work early?
5. I slept well last night. How about you? Did you sleep well last night?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1. (watch TV) I watched TV. or I didn’t watch TV.
2. (get up before 7 o’clock) I got up before 7 o’clock.
3. (have a shower) I had a shower.
4. (buy a magazine) I bought a magazine.
5. (eat meat) I ate meat.
6. (go to bed before 10.30) I went to bed before 10.30.

12.4 Write B’s questions. Use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>cost</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>go to bed late</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>have a nice time</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 A: I was late for the meeting.</td>
<td>B: What time?</td>
<td>6 A: I’m tired this morning.</td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>A: No, but I didn’t sleep very well.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Half past nine.</td>
<td>B:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 A: I played tennis this afternoon.</td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>7 A: We went to the beach yesterday.</td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>A: Yes, it was great.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: No, I lost.</td>
<td>B:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>A: Yes, it was great.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: To the mountains.</td>
<td>B:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form - positive, negative or question.

1. We went to the cinema, but the film wasn’t very good. We didn’t enjoy it. (enjoy)
2. Tim some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
3. yesterday? ‘No, it was a nice day.’ (rain)
4. We were tired, so we long at the party. (stay)
5. It was very warm in the room, so I a window. (open)
6. ‘Did you phone Chris this morning?’ ‘No, I time.’ (have)
7. ‘I cut my hand this morning.’ ‘How that?’ (do)
8. ‘Why weren’t you at the meeting yesterday?’ ‘I about it.’ (know)
## I was doing (past continuous)

**was/were + -ing is the past continuous:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was doing</td>
<td>I was not (wasn't) doing</td>
<td>was doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he was watching</td>
<td>he wasn't watching</td>
<td>He was watching?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she was playing</td>
<td>she wasn't playing</td>
<td>She was playing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it was swimming</td>
<td>it wasn't swimming</td>
<td>It was swimming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we were living</td>
<td>we weren't living</td>
<td>were living?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were wearing</td>
<td>you weren't wearing</td>
<td>You were wearing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they were eating</td>
<td>they weren't eating</td>
<td>They were eating?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- ‘What did he say?’ ‘I don’t know. I wasn’t listening.’
- It was raining, so we didn’t go out.
- In 2001 we were living in Canada.
- Today she’s wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

*Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) → Appendix 5*

### am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

- I’m working (now).
- It isn’t raining (now).
- What are you doing (now)?
- I was working at 10.30 last night.
- It wasn’t raining when we went out.
- What were you doing at three o’clock?
Exercises

Unit 13

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1. [Rachel] was at home. She was watching TV.
2. Jack and Kate _____________________________. They _____________________________.
3. Tim _____________________________. He _____________________________.
4. _____________________________. He _____________________________.
5. _____________________________. He _____________________________.
6. And you? I _____________________________.

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:10-7:25</td>
<td>Reading a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:30-8:10</td>
<td>Driving to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:30-9:00</td>
<td>Eating breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:20-10:00</td>
<td>Playing tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:15-11:45</td>
<td>Working in the office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00-12:45</td>
<td>Having lunch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. At 8.45 _____________________________.
2. At 10.45 _____________________________.
3. At 8 o'clock _____________________________.
4. At 12.10 _____________________________.
5. At 7.15 _____________________________.
6. At 9.30 _____________________________.

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1. Where were you living in 1999?
   - In London.
   - I was asleep.
   - No, it was sunny.
   - Because she was late.
   - No, a T-shirt and jeans.

2. What were you doing at 2 o'clock?
3. When you got up?
4. Why did you drive so fast?
5. What were you wearing?

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

Joe [wear / a jacket] _____________________________.
He wasn't wearing a jacket.

1. [carry / a bag] _____________________________.
2. [go / to the dentist] _____________________________.
3. [eat / an ice-cream] _____________________________.
4. [carry / an umbrella] _____________________________.
5. [go / home] _____________________________.
6. [wear / a hat] _____________________________.
7. [ride / a bicycle] _____________________________.

He, I'm going shopping.
Jack was reading a book. The phone rang. He stopped reading. He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (past simple)
What was Jack doing when the phone rang? He was reading a book. (past continuous)

What did he do when the phone rang? He stopped reading and answered the phone. (past simple)

Jack began reading before the phone rang. So when the phone rang, he was reading.

---

past simple

- A: What did you do yesterday morning?
  B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

  start  finish
  10 o'clock  11.30

  we played complete action

- Jack read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you watch the film on television last night?
- It didn't rain while we were on holiday.

- I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Kelly fell asleep while she was reading.

past continuous

- A: What were you doing at 10.30?
  B: We were playing tennis.

  start  finish
  10 o'clock  11.30

  we were playing unfinished action

- Jack was reading a book when the phone rang.
- Were you watching television when I phoned you?
- It wasn't raining when I got up.
14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1

The train arrive (arrive) at the station and Paula get off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, wait to meet her.

2

Yesterday Sue walk (walk) along the road when she meet (meet) James. He go (go) to the station to catch a train and he carry (carry) a bag. They stop (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

3

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1 A: What were you doing (you/do) when the phone ring (ring)?
   B: I was watching (watch) television.
2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she study (study).
3 A: What time post/arrive (arrive) this morning?
   B: It come (come) while I have (have) breakfast.
4 A: Was Tracey at work today?
   B: No, she not/go to work. She was ill.
5 A: How fast drive (you/drive) when the police stop (stop) you?
   B: I'm not sure, but I not/drive very fast.
6 A: Your team win (win) the football match yesterday?
   B: The weather was very bad, so we not/play (not/play).
7 A: How break (you/break) the window?
   B: We play (play) football. I kick (kick) the ball and it hit (hit) the window.
8 A: You see (you/see) Jenny last night?
   B: Yes, she wear (wear) a very nice jacket.
9 A: What do you do (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
   B: I was asleep.
10 A: I lose (lose) my key last night.
    B: How get (you/get) into your room?
    A: I climb (climb) in through a window.

Additional exercises 14-15 (pages 257-58)
I have done (present perfect 1)

**has cleaned / have gone** etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have ('ve)</th>
<th>cleaned</th>
<th>finished</th>
<th>started</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>done</th>
<th>been</th>
<th>gone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>has ('s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>has not (hasn't)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regular verbs

The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the past simple):

- clean → I have cleaned
- finish → we have finished
- start → she has started

Irregular verbs

The past participle is not **-ed**.

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

- buy → I bought / I have bought
- have → he had / he has had

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

- break → I broke / I have broken
- fall → it fell / it has fallen
- see → you saw / you have seen
- go → they went / they have gone

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She's gone to bed.' (= she is in bed now)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present. (= I don't have a present for her now)
- 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?' (= where is he now?)
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it? (= do you need it now?)
15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

| go to bed | clean his shoes | stop raining |
| close the door | fall down | have a shower |

before | now
---|---
1 | | He has cleaned his shoes.
2 | | She
3 | | They
4 | | It
5 | | He
6 | | The

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break buy decide finish forget go go
invite read see not/see take tell not/tell

1 'Can I have a look at your newspaper?' 'Yes, I've finished with it.'
2 I ............... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3 'Where is Liz?' 'She's not here. She ............... out.'
4 I'm looking for Paula. ............... you ............... her?
5 Look! Somebody ............... that window.
6 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I ............... her.'
7 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody ............... it.
8 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I ............... them.'
9 I'm looking for Sarah. Where ............... she ............... her name?
10 I know that woman, but I ............... her name.
11 Sue is having a party tonight. She ............... a lot of people.
12 What are you going to do? ............... you ............... ?
13 A: Does Bill know about the meeting tomorrow? B: I don't think so. I ............... him.
14 'Do you want this magazine?' 'No, I ............... it, thanks.'
I’ve just ...

I’ve just a short time ago

- **A**: Are Diane and Paul here?
  - **B**: Yes, they’ve just arrived.

- **A**: Are you hungry?
  - **B**: No, I’ve just had dinner.

- **A**: Is Tom here?
  - **B**: No, I’m afraid he’s just gone.
    (= he has just gone)

I’ve already ...

**already** = before you expected / before I expected

- **A**: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
  - **B**: They’ve already arrived.
    (= before you expected)

- **A**: It’s only 9 o’clock and Anna has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)

- **A**: Jon, this is Emma.
  - **B**: Yes, I know. We’ve already met.

I haven’t ... yet / Have you ... yet?

**yet** = until now

We use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually at the end.

**yet** in negative sentences (I haven’t ... yet)

- **A**: Are Diane and Paul here?
  - **B**: No, they haven’t arrived yet.
    (but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)

- **A**: Does James know that you’re going away?
  - **B**: No, I haven’t told him yet.
    (but B is going to tell him soon)

- **A**: Silvia has bought a new dress, but she hasn’t worn it yet.

**yet** in questions (Have you ... yet?)

- **A**: Have Diane and Paul arrived yet?
  - **B**: No, not yet. We’re still waiting for them.

- **A**: Has Nicole started her new job yet?
  - **B**: No, she starts next week.

- **A**: This is my new dress.
  - **B**: Oh, it’s nice. Have you worn it yet?

present perfect — Units 15, 17–20 word order — Unit 94 still, yet and already — Unit 95
Exercises

16.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.

1. They've just arrived.
2. He
3. They
4. The race

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

1. What time is Paul arriving?
   He's already arrived.
2. Do your friends want to see the film?
   No, they haven't already done it.
3. Don't forget to phone Tom.
   I haven't already phoned him.
4. When is Martin going away?
   He hasn't already gone.
5. Do you want to read the newspaper?
   I haven't already read it.
6. When does Sarah start her new job?
   She hasn't already started it.

16.3 Write a sentence with just (They've just ... / She's just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.).

1. a few minutes ago
   (she / go / out)
   She hasn't gone out yet.
2. a few minutes ago
   (the bus / go)
   The bus hasn't gone yet.
3. a few minutes ago
   (the train / leave)
   The train hasn't left yet.
4. a few minutes ago
   (he / open / it)
   He hasn't opened it yet.
5. a few minutes ago
   (they / finish / their dinner)
   They haven't finished their dinner yet.
6. a few minutes ago
   (it / stop / raining)
   It hasn't stopped raining yet.

16.4 Write questions with yet.

1. Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
   Have you started your new job yet?
2. Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
   Have you met your new neighbours yet?
3. Your friend must pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
   Have you paid your phone bill yet?
4. Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:
   Have you sold your car yet?
We use the present perfect (have been / have bad / have played etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now — for example, a person's life:

**Have you ever** been to Japan?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- 'Have you been to France?' 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada, but I haven't been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice' (twice = two times)

**Present perfect + ever** (in questions) and **never**:

- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
- My sister has never travelled by plane.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've never seen him before.'

**gone** and **been**

Bill has **gone** to Spain. (= he is in Spain now)

Bill has **been** to Spain. (= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

**Compare:**

- I can't find Susan. Where has she **gone**? (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where **have** you **been**?
Exercises

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ...? Write the questions.

Helen

Have you ever been to London?
Have you ever played golf?
Have you ever lost your passport?
Have you ever won a race?
Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
Have you ever been to New York?
Have you ever driven a bus?
Have you ever broken your leg?

No, never.
Yes, many times.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
No, never.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

Helen

1 (New York) She's been to New York twice.
2 (Australia) She
3 (win / a race) Yes, many times.
4 (fly / in a helicopter) No, never.

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (New York) I
6 (play / tennis) Yes, many times.
7 (drive / a lorry) No, never.
8 (be / late for work or school) Yes, once.

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary

She has had many different jobs.
She

1 have be do write travel meet
all over the world a lot of interesting things many different jobs a lot of interesting people ten books married three times

17.4 Write gone or been.

Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.

1 ‘Where’s Jane?’ ‘She’s not here. I think she’s gone to the bank.’
2 Hello, Sue. Where have you been?
3 ‘Have you ever been to Mexico?’ ‘No, never.’
4 My parents aren’t at home at the moment. They’ve gone out.
5 There’s a new restaurant in town. Have you been to it?
6 Rebecca knows Paris well. She’s been there many times.
7 Helen was here earlier, but I think she’s gone now.

→ Additional exercises 16, 18 (pages 258-59, 260)
How long have you ...? (present perfect 4)

Jane is on holiday in Ireland.
She is there now.
She arrived in Ireland on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in Ireland?
She has been in Ireland since Monday.
for three days.

Compare is and has been:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>She is in Ireland now.</th>
<th>She has been in Ireland since Monday for three days.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is = present</td>
<td>has been = present perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

**present simple**

Dan and Kate are married.
They have been married for five years.
(not They are married for five years.)

Are you married?
How long have you been married?
(not How long are you married?)

Do you know Lisa?
How long have you known her?
(not How long do you know her?)

I know Lisa.
I've known her for a long time.
(not I know her for ...)

Vicky lives in London.
How long has she lived in London?
She has lived there all her life.

I have a car.
How long have you had your car?
I've had it since April.

**present continuous**

I'm learning German.
How long have you been learning German?
(not How long are you learning German?)

David is watching TV.
I've been watching TV for two years.

It's raining.
He's been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
It's been raining all day.
Exercises

18.1 Complete these sentences.

1. Jane is in Ireland. She ........................................ in Ireland since Monday.
2. I know Lisa. I ........................................ her for a long time.
3. Sarah and Andy are married. They ........................................ married since 1999.
4. Brian is ill. He ........................................ ill for the last few days.
5. We live in Scott Road. We ........................................ there for a long time.
6. Catherine works in a bank. She ........................................ in a bank for five years.
7. Alan has a headache. He ........................................ a headache since he got up this morning.
8. I’m learning English. I ........................................ English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with How long ...?

1. Jane is on holiday. How long has she been on holiday? ?
2. Scott and Judy are in Brazil. How long have they been in Brazil? ?
3. I know Amy. How long have you known her? ?
4. Diana is learning Italian. How long have you been learning Italian? ?
5. My brother lives in Canada. How long has she lived in Canada? ?
6. I’m a teacher. How long have you been a teacher? ?
7. It is raining. How long has it been raining? ?

18.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

- for ten minutes
- all day
- all her life
- since he was 20
- since Sunday

1. They have been married for ten years.
2. She ........................................
3. They ........................................
4. The sun ........................................
5. She ........................................
6. He ........................................

18.4 Which is right?

1. Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
2. Jane and I are friends. I know / I’ve known her very well.
3. Jane and I are friends. I know / I’ve known her for a long time.
4. A: Sorry I’m late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?
   B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5. Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6. Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7. ‘How long do you live / have you lived in this house?’ ‘About ten years.’
8. ‘Is that a new coat?’ ‘No, I have / I’ve had this coat for a long time.’
9. Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.
for and since

We use *for* and *since* to say *how long*:

- Jane is in Ireland. She *has been* there *since Monday*.

We use *for* + a period of time
(three days / two years etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for three days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

past    now

We use *since* + the start of the period
(Monday / 9 o’clock etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>since Monday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use *ago* with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

- Richard has been in Canada *for six months*. (*not since six months)*
- We’ve been waiting *for two hours*. (*not since two hours)*
- I’ve lived in London *for a long time*.

- Richard has been in Canada *since January*. (= from January to now)
- We’ve been waiting *since 9 o’clock*. (= from 9 o’clock to now)
- I’ve lived in London *since I was ten years old*.

ago

*ago* = before now:

- Susan started her new job *three weeks ago*. (= three weeks before now)
- *When did Tom go out?* "Ten minutes ago." (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner *an hour ago*.
- Life was very different *a hundred years ago*.

We use *ago* with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare *ago* and *for*:

- *When did Jane arrive in Ireland?*
  She *arrived* in Ireland *three days ago*.

- *How long has she been in Ireland?*
  She *has been* in Ireland *for three days*.
19.1 Write for or since.
1 Jane has been in Ireland since Monday.
2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
3 My aunt has lived in Australia for 15 years.
4 Jennifer is in her office. She has been there since 7 o’clock.
5 India has been an independent country since 1947.
6 The bus is late. We’ve been waiting for 20 minutes.
7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty for many years.
8 Michael has been ill for a long time. He has been in hospital since October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use ago.
1 When was your last meal? Three hours ago.
2 When was the last time you were ill? (three days)
3 When did you last go to the cinema? (20 years)
4 When was the last time you were in a car? (an hour)
5 When was the last time you went on holiday? (a few days)
6 When has Silvia been learning English? (six months)
7 Have you known Lisa? (a long time)

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use for or ago with these words.
1 Jane arrived in Ireland three days ago.
2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
3 Lynn and Mark have been married for 20 years.
4 Lynn and Mark got married two years ago.
5 Dan arrived a few days ago.
6 I bought these shoes three months ago.
7 Silvia has been learning English for a long time.
8 Have you known Lisa for a long time?

19.4 Complete the sentences with for or since.
1 (Jane is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago) Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday) Jack has been here for three days.
3 (It’s raining – it started an hour ago) It’s been raining for an hour.
4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2002) I’ve known Sue since 2002.
5 (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago) Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6 (Liz is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago) Liz has been studying medicine for three years.
7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old) David has been playing the piano for a long time.

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:
I’ve lived ... I’ve been ... I’ve been learning ... I’ve known ... I’ve had ...
1 I’ve lived in this town for three years.
2 I’ve been learning English since I was 12.
3 I’ve known Lisa for three years.
4 I’ve had a car since I was 18.
5 I’ve been learning to play the guitar for a long time.

→ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 258–60)
I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

With a finished time (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>finished time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We arrived</td>
<td>yesterday, last week, at 3 o’clock, in 2002, six months ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been etc.) with a finished time:

- I saw Paula yesterday. (not I have seen)
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (not Where have you been)
- We didn’t have a holiday last year. (not We haven’t had)
- ‘What did you do last night?’ ‘I stayed at home.’
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask When ... ? or What time ... ?:

- When did you buy your computer? (not When have you bought?)
- What time did Andy go out? (not What time has Andy gone out)

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present perfect</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have lost my key. (= I can’t find it now)</td>
<td>I lost my key last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ben has gone home. (= he isn’t here now)</td>
<td>Ben went home ten minutes ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you seen Kate? (= where is she now?)</td>
<td>Did you see Kate on Saturday?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>finished time</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did you go to Spain last year?</td>
<td>Did you go to Spain last year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.</td>
<td>Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The letter didn’t arrive yesterday.</td>
<td>The letter didn’t arrive yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We lived in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.</td>
<td>We lived in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Have you seen Kate? Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
2. Have you started your new job? Yes, I last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? Yes, they at 5 o’clock.
4. Has Sarah gone away? Yes, she on Friday.
5. Have you worn your new suit? Yes, I yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. [The verbs are underlined.]

1. I’ve lost my key. I can’t find it. OK. Did you see.
2. Have you seen Kate yesterday? Did you see.
3. I’ve finished my work at 2 o’clock. Did you see.
4. I’m ready now. I’ve finished my work. Did you see.
5. What time have you finished your work? Did you see.
6. Sue isn’t here. She’s gone out. Did you see.
7. Steve’s grandmother has died two years ago. Did you see.
8. Where have you been last night? Did you see.

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
2. We didn’t have (not/have) a holiday last year.
3. I played (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time have you finished your work?
5. Have you ever met (you/ever/meet) a famous person?
6. The weather was (not/be) very good yesterday.
7. Kathy travels a lot. She has visited (visit) many countries.
8. I switched (you/go) off the light before going out this morning.
9. I live in New York now, but I have lived (live) in Mexico for many years.
10. “What’s Canada like? Is it beautiful?” “I don’t know. I have never been (not/be) there.”

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. A: Have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida?
   B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.
   A: Have you ever had (you/have) a good time?
   B: Yes, it was (be) great.

2. A: Where’s Alan? B: Yes, he went (go) out a few minutes ago.
   A: And Rachel?
   B: I don’t know. I never saw (not/see) her.

3. Rose works in a factory. She has worked (work) there for six months.
   Before that she was a waitress in a restaurant. She
   has been (work) there for two years, but she
   doesn’t enjoy (not/enjoy) it very much.

4. A: Do you know Martin’s sister?
   B: I have seen (see) her a few times, but I
   never speak (never/speak) to her. Have you ever spoken (you/ever/speak) to her?
   A: Yes, I met (meet) her at a party last week. She’s very nice.
is done  was done (passive 1)

The office is cleaned every day.
The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody cleans the office every day. (active)
The office is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (active)
The office was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

The passive is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple</th>
<th>am/is/are (not)</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invented</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td>taken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- We weren't invited to the party last week.
- 'Was anybody injured in the accident?' ‘Yes, two people were taken to hospital.’

was/were born
- I was born in Berlin in 1989. (not I am born)
- ‘Where were you born?’ ‘In Cairo’

passive + by ...
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- I was bitten by a dog a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted by a friend of mine.
21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions. Sentences 1–7 are present.

1 (the office / clean / every day) The office is cleaned every day.
2 (these rooms / clean / every day?) Are these rooms cleaned every day?
3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass is made from sand.
4 (stamps / sell / in a post office) Stamps are sold in a post office.
5 (this room / not / use / very often) This room is not used very often.
6 (we / allow / to park here?) We allow you to park here.
7 (how / this word / pronounce?) How is this word pronounced?

Sentences 8–15 are past.

8 (the office / clean / yesterday) The office was cleaned yesterday.
9 (the house / paint / last month) The house was painted last month.
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago) My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 (three people / injure / in the accident) Three people were injured in the accident.
12 (when / this bridge / build?) When was this bridge built?
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) I was not woken up by the noise.
14 (how / these windows / break?) How did these windows break?
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?) You invited me to Jon's party last week.

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1 This house built 100 years ago.
2 Football plays in most countries of the world.
3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address?
4 A garage is a place where cars repair.
5 Where are you born?
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen.
8 When was invented the bicycle?

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:
clean damage find give invite make make show steal take

1 The room is cleaned every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital.
3 Paper is made from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms were damaged.
5 ‘Where did you get this picture?’ ‘It was given to me by a friend of mine.’
6 Many American programmes were shown on British television.
7 ‘Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?’ ‘No. They were invited, but they didn’t go.’
8 ‘How old is this film?’ ‘It was made in 1965.’
9 My car was taken last week, but the next day it was found by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?

1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sally / Manchester) Sally was born in Manchester.
3 (her parents / Ireland) Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 (you / ??) You were born in ?
5 (your mother / ??) Your mother was born in ?
is being done  has been done (passive 2)
is/are being ... (present continuous passive)

Somebody is painting the door. (active)
The door is being painted. (passive)

- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:
- The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous)
  The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
- In Britain football matches are often played at the weekend, but
  no matches are being played next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)

Somebody has painted the door. (active)
The door has been painted. (passive)

- My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I’m not going to the party. I haven’t been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this shirt been washed? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:
- The room isn’t dirty any more. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)
  The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
- I can’t find my keys. I think they’ve been stolen. (present perfect)
  My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.
Exercises

Unit 22

22.1 What's happening?

1 The car **is being repaired.**
2 A bridge **is being repaired.**
3 The windows **have been broken.**
4 The grass **is being mowed.**

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).

1 (the office / clean) **The office is being cleaned.**
2 (the shirts / iron) **The shirts have been ironed.**
3 (the window / break) The window **has been broken.**
4 (the roof / repair) The roof **has been repaired.**
5 (the car / damage) **The car has been damaged.**
6 (the houses / knock / down) **The houses have been knocked down.**
7 (the trees / cut / down) **The trees have been cut down.**
8 (they / invite / to a party) **They have been invited to a party.**

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1 I can't use my office at the moment. It **is being painted.** (paint)
2 We didn't go to the party. We **weren't invited.** (not/invite)
3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It **has been repaired.** (repair)
4 The washing machine **was repaired yesterday afternoon.** (repair)
5 A factory is a place where things **are made.** (make)
6 How old are these houses? When **were they built?** (they/build)
7 A: **Is Steve using the computer at the moment?**
     B: Yes, Steve is using it.
8 I've never seen these flowers before. What **have they been called?** (they/call)
9 My sunglasses **were stolen at the beach yesterday.** (steal)
10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It **has been damaged last week and it **has not been repaired yet.** (not/repair)

→ Additional exercises 24–27 (pages 263–64)
be/have/do in present and past tenses

be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

am/is/are + -ing
(present continuous)
→ Units 3-4 and 25

was/were + -ing
(past continuous)
→ Unit 13

- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- It isn't raining at the moment.
- What are you doing this evening?
- I was working when she arrived.
- It wasn't raining, so we didn't need an umbrella.
- What were you doing at 3 o'clock?

be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

am/is/are + past participle
(passive present simple)
→ Unit 21

was/were + past participle
(passive past simple)
→ Unit 21

- I'm never invited to parties.
- Butter is made from milk.
- These offices aren't cleaned every day.
- The office was cleaned yesterday.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- How was the window broken?
- Where were you born?

have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

have/has + past participle
(present perfect)
→ Units 15–18

- I've cleaned my room.
- Tom has lost his passport.
- Kate hasn't been to Canada.
- Where have Paul and Nicole gone?

do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

do/does + infinitive
(present simple negative
and questions)
→ Units 6–7

did + infinitive
(past simple negative and
questions)
→ Unit 12

- I like coffee, but I don't like tea.
- Chris doesn't go out very often.
- What do you usually do at weekends?
- Does Silvia live alone?
- I didn't watch TV yesterday.
- It didn't rain last week.
- What time did Paul and Nicole go out?

irregular verbs → Unit 24, Appendix 2–3
23.1 Write is/are or do/does.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Do</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>6.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Where</strong></td>
<td><strong>are</strong></td>
<td><strong>7.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Why</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>8.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Bill</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>9.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>10.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>work</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>going?</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>the</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>looking</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>Maria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bill</strong></td>
<td>live</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>like</td>
<td>cooking?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.2 Write am not/isn't/aren't or don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gary</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>4.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.</strong></td>
<td><strong>My</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>6.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7.</strong></td>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>8.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>10.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tom</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>work</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I'm</strong></td>
<td>very</td>
<td>tired.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I'm</strong></td>
<td>very</td>
<td>tired.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>He's</strong></td>
<td><strong>going</strong></td>
<td>working</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>They</strong></td>
<td>usually</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nicole</strong></td>
<td>has</td>
<td>travelled</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>You</strong></td>
<td>can</td>
<td>turn</td>
<td>off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liz</strong></td>
<td>has</td>
<td>invited</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.3 Write was/were/did/have/has.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong></td>
<td><strong>What</strong></td>
<td><strong>4.</strong></td>
<td><strong>5.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6.</strong></td>
<td><strong>When</strong></td>
<td><strong>7.</strong></td>
<td><strong>8.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9.</strong></td>
<td><strong>10.</strong></td>
<td><strong>11.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Where</strong></td>
<td><strong>your</strong></td>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>made?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>your</strong></td>
<td>mother</td>
<td>born?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Barbara</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>home?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What</strong></td>
<td><strong>time</strong></td>
<td><strong>she</strong></td>
<td>go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>these</strong></td>
<td>houses</td>
<td>built?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Steve</strong></td>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>yet?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>going</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>early?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>been</td>
<td>married?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.4 Write is/are/was/were/have/has.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong></td>
<td><strong>What</strong></td>
<td><strong>4.</strong></td>
<td><strong>5.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6.</strong></td>
<td><strong>7.</strong></td>
<td><strong>8.</strong></td>
<td><strong>9.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10.</strong></td>
<td><strong>11.</strong></td>
<td><strong>12.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Joe</strong></td>
<td><strong>lost</strong></td>
<td>his</td>
<td>passport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>This</strong></td>
<td><strong>built</strong></td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>This</strong></td>
<td><strong>clean.</strong></td>
<td><strong>cleaned</strong></td>
<td>every</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Where</strong></td>
<td><strong>born?</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Glass</strong></td>
<td><strong>made</strong></td>
<td>from</td>
<td>sand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>This</strong></td>
<td><strong>very</strong></td>
<td>old</td>
<td>photograph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>David</strong></td>
<td><strong>bought</strong></td>
<td>new</td>
<td>car.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>damage</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>pronounce</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>understand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>go</strong></td>
<td>to</td>
<td>bed</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>late</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>in</strong></td>
<td>the</td>
<td>accident,</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>OK.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's **raining**.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you **go** to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you **gone** them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you **understand** it?
5. My car was **badly** in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has got a car, but she doesn't **go** it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has **gone** away for a few days.
8. I don't **solve** the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Martin is in his room. He's **listening** to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it **pronounced**?
11. How do you **understand** this window? Can you show me?
Regular and irregular verbs

Regular verbs

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:

- clean → cleaned
- live → lived
- paint → painted
- study → studied

**Past simple** (→ Unit 11)

- I cleaned my room yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering at university.

**Past participle**

- have/has + past participle (present perfect → Units 15–18):
  - I have cleaned my room.
  - Tina has lived in London for ten years.
- be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + past participle (passive → Units 21–22):
  - These rooms are cleaned every day.
  - My car has been repaired.

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do not end in -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I made a cake yesterday. *(past simple)*
- I have made some coffee. *(past participle — present perfect)*
- Butter is made from milk. *(past participle — passive present)*

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Somebody broke this window last night. *(past simple)*
- Somebody has broken this window. *(past participle — present perfect)*
- This window was broken last night. *(past participle — passive past)*

irregular verbs → Appendix 2–3  spelling (regular verbs) → Appendix 5
Exercises

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 get</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 enjoy</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 happen</td>
<td>happened</td>
<td>happened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 watch</td>
<td>watched</td>
<td>watched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has broken this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I slept very well last night. (sleep)
4. We saw a really good film yesterday. (see)
5. It rained a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6. I’ve lost my bag. Have you seen it? (see)
7. Rosa’s bicycle was stolen last week. (steal)
8. I went to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you finished your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping centre was built about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Anna learned to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12. I’ve never ridden a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I’ve known her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I fell and hurt my leg. (fall / hurt)
15. My brother ran in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever run in a marathon? (run / run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cost</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>meet</th>
<th>sell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I have made some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you asked John about your new job?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn’t play very well, but we met the game.
4. I know Gary, but I’ve never met his wife.
5. We were disturbed by loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river and swam to the other side.
7. ‘Did you like the film?’ ‘Yes, I thought it was very good.’
8. Many different languages are spoken in the Philippines.
9. Our holiday cost a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you ever driven a very fast car?
11. All the tickets for the concert were sold very quickly.
12. A bird flew through the open window while we were having our dinner.
What are you doing tomorrow?

They are playing tennis (now).

He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now:

- Where are Sue and Amanda? ‘They’re playing tennis in the park.’
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the future (*tomorrow / next week etc.*):

- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I’m not working next week.

**I am doing something tomorrow** = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie is going to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We’re having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting your friends tonight?
- What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- I’m not going out tonight. I’m staying at home.

You can also say ‘I’m going to do something’ (→ Unit 26).

Be careful! Do not use the **present simple** (*I stay / do you go etc.*) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I’m staying at home this evening. *(not I stay)*
- Are you going out tonight? *(not Do you go)*
- Lisa isn’t coming to the party next week. *(not Lisa doesn’t come)*

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:

- The train arrives at 7.30.
- What time does the film finish?

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>present continuous</strong> (usually for people)</th>
<th><strong>present simple</strong> (for timetables, programmes etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to a concert tomorrow.</td>
<td>The concert starts at 7.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time are you leaving?</td>
<td>What time does your train leave?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

present continuous → Units 3–4  present simple → Units 5–7  I’m going to ... → Unit 26
25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

1 Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Rachel is reading a novel.
4 Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5 Tom and Sue are at a party.

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1 (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
2 (you / work / next week?) What are you going to do next week?
3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?) What are you going to do tomorrow evening?
4 (what time / your friends / come?) What time are your friends coming?
5 (when / Liz / go / on holiday?) When is Liz going on holiday?

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1 I'm staying at home tonight.
2 I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
3 I'm doing my homework on Tuesday.
4 I'm going shopping on Wednesday.
5 I'm going to see my friends on Thursday.
6 I'm going to the cinema on Friday.

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train leaves etc.).

1 Are you going (you/go) out tonight? No, I'm too tired.
2 We're going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7.30.
3 Do you know about Sally? (she/get) married next month!
4 A: My parents (go) on holiday next week. B: Oh, that's nice. Where (they/go)?
5 Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course (finish) on Friday.
6 There's a party tomorrow night, but (I/not/go). I'm going out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? (we/meet) outside the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
7 A: How (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi? B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus (leave) at midnight.
8 A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight? B: Yes, what time (the film / begin)?
I'm going to ...

A

I'm going to do something

She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use am/is/are going to ... for the future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>(not) going to do ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>going to drink ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they are</td>
<td>going to watch ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it —> I'm going to do it

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- Are you going to invite Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

B

Something is going to happen = we can see now that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain. (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready. I'm going to be late. (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)

C

present for the future → Unit 25 will → Units 27-28
26.1 What are these people saying?

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

26.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

- do
- eat
- give
- lie down
- stay
- walk
- wash
- watch
- wear

1. My hands are dirty. ____________ them.
2. What ______ are you going to wear ______ to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I ______.
4. Steve is going to London next week. He ______ with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I ______ this sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We ______ her a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She ______ for an hour.
8. There's a good film on Channel 6 tonight. ______ you ______ it?
9. What ______ Rachel ______ when she leaves school?

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

1. It's going to rain.
2. The shelf ______
3. The car ______
4. He ______

26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm ______
2. ______
3. ______
Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

**will + infinitive** (will be / will win / will come etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>will (‘ll) be</th>
<th>win?</th>
<th>eat?</th>
<th>come? etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will not (won’t)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘ll = will; ’ll (I will) / you’ll / she’ll etc.

won’t = will not; I won’t (= I will not) / you won’t / she won’t etc.

We use will for the **future** (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she’ll be in Rome. Next week she’ll be in Tokyo.
- You can call me this evening. I’ll be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- We’ll probably go out this evening.
- Will you be at home this evening?
- I won’t be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don’t drink coffee before you go to bed. You won’t sleep.

We often say I think ... will ...

- I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- I don’t think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the exam will be difficult?

We do **not** use will for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

- We’re going to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (not We will go)
- I’m not working tomorrow. (not I won’t work)
- Are you going to do the exam? (not Will you do)

**shall**

You can say I shall (= I will) and we shall (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (‘ll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. or I think we will (we’ll) win.

But do **not** use shall with you/he/she/it:

- Tom will be late. (not Tom shall be)
Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with she was, she’s or she’ll be.

2. Tomorrow ____________ in Amsterdam.
3. Last week ____________ in Barcelona.
4. Next week ____________ in London.
5. At the moment ____________ in Brussels.
6. Three days ago ____________ in Munich.
7. At the end of her trip ____________ very tired.

Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:
I’ll be ... or I’ll probably be ... or I don’t know where I’ll be.

1. (at 10 o’clock tomorrow) I’ll probably be on the beach.
2. (one hour from now) ____________
3. (at midnight tonight) ____________
4. (at 3 o’clock tomorrow afternoon) ____________
5. (two years from now) ____________

Put in will (’ll) or won’t.
1. Don’t drink coffee before you go to bed. You ____________ sleep.
2. ‘Are you ready yet?’ ‘Not yet. I ____________, be ready in five minutes.’
3. I’m going away for a few days. I’m leaving tonight, so I ____________, be at home tomorrow.
4. It ____________ rain, so you don’t need to take an umbrella.
5. I don’t feel very well this evening.
   A: Well, go to bed early and you ____________ feel better in the morning.
6. It’s Bill’s birthday next Monday. He ____________ be 25.
7. I’m sorry I was late this morning. It ____________ happen again.

Write sentences with I think ... or I don’t think ...
1. Kelly will pass the exam) I think Kelly will pass the exam.
2. (Kelly won’t pass the exam) I don’t think Kelly will pass the exam.
3. (we’ll win the game) ____________
4. (I won’t be here tomorrow) ____________
5. Sue will like her present) ____________
6. (they won’t get married) ____________
7. (you won’t enjoy the film) ____________

Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)
1. We’ll go / We’re going to the theatre tonight. We’ve got tickets. (We’re going is right)
2. What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening? ‘Nothing I’m free.’
3. They’ll go / They’re going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
4. I’m sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She’s very rich.
5. Why are you putting on your coat? ‘I’ll go / I’m going out.’
6. Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?
7. Steve can’t meet us on Saturday. He’ll work / He’s working.
8. Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
9. What are your plans for the weekend?
10. Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.
You can use I'll ... (I will) when you offer something or decide to do something:
- 'My bag is very heavy.' I'll carry it for you.
- I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? 'OK, bye.'

We often say I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:
- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit outside.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:
- I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not I phone you)
- I think I'll go to bed early. (not I go to bed)

Do not use I'll ... for something you decided before (→ Units 25-26):
- I'm working tomorrow. (not I'll work)
- There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (not I'll watch)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not What will you do)

Shall I ...? Shall we ...?

Shall I / Shall we ... ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?
- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'OK, what time shall we meet?'

What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25  I'm going to ... → Unit 26  will/shall 1 → Unit 27
Let's → Units 35, 53
Exercises

Unit 28

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + these verbs:

- carry  do  eat  send  show  sit  stay

1. My bag is very heavy. I'll carry it for you.
2. Enjoy your holiday. Thank you.
3. I don't want this banana. I don't want it.
4. Do you want a chair? Well, I'm hungry.
5. Did you phone Jenny? No, it's OK.
6. Are you coming with me? No, I don't think so.
7. How do you use this camera? I'll show it to me and give it to her.

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + these verbs:

- buy  buy  go  have  play

1. It's cold today. I don't think I'll go out.
2. I'm hungry. I don't think I'll play tennis.
3. I feel very tired. I think I'll have something to eat.
4. I like this hat. I think I'll turn it on.
5. This camera is too expensive. I don't think I'll turn it on.

28.3 Which is right?

1. I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I'll phone is right)
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3. I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5. Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. 'This letter is for Rose.' I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.
7. A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
   B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8. I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

28.4 Write sentences with Shall I ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- make  turn off
- open  turn on
- some sandwiches  the television
- the light  the window

1. It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
2. This programme isn't very good. Shall I open the television?
3. I'm hungry. Shall I turn on the light?
4. It's dark in this room. Shall I turn off the light?

28.5 Write sentences with Shall we ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- what  where
- what time  who
- buy  invite
- go  meet

1. Let's go out tonight. OK, what time shall we meet?
2. Let's have a holiday. OK, where shall we meet?
3. Let's spend some money. OK, what shall we buy?
4. Let's have a party. OK, who shall we invite?
**might**

He might go to New York.  
(\(\Rightarrow\) it is possible that he will go to New York)

It might rain.  
(\(\Rightarrow\) it is possible that it will rain)

**might + infinitive** (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>might (not)</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I might = it is possible that I will:

- I might go to the cinema this evening, but I’m not sure. (\(\Rightarrow\) it is possible that I will go)
- I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Rebecca might phone later. (possible)
- Sue might not come to the party. (possible)

Study the difference:

- I’m playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
  - I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Rebecca is going to phone later. (sure)
  - Rebecca might phone later. (possible)

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

- I might not go to work tomorrow. (\(\Rightarrow\) it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue might not come to the party. (\(\Rightarrow\) it is possible that she will not come)

**may**

You can use may in the same way. I may = I might:

- I may go to the cinema this evening. (\(\Rightarrow\) I might go)
- Sue may not come to the party. (\(\Rightarrow\) Sue might not come)

May I ... ? = Is it OK to ... ? / Can I ... ?:

- May I ask a question? (\(\Rightarrow\) is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- May I sit here? ‘Yes, of course’
Exercises

29.1 Write sentences with **might**.
1. (It's possible that I'll go to the cinema)
2. (It's possible that I'll see you tomorrow)
3. (It's possible that Sarah will forget to phone)
4. (It's possible that it will snow today)
5. (It's possible that I'll be late tonight)

Write sentences with **might not**.
6. (It's possible that Mark will not be here next week)
7. (It's possible that I won't have time to go out)

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with I might.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fish</th>
<th>go away</th>
<th>Italy</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>a new car</th>
<th>taxi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Where are you going for your holidays? I'm not sure. I might go to Italy.
2. What are you doing at the weekend? I don't know. I might go away.
3. When will you see Kate again? I'm not sure. I might go to Italy.
4. What are you going to have for dinner? I don't know. I might have fish.
5. How are you going to get home tonight? I'm not sure. I might take a taxi.
6. I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it? I haven't decided yet. I might go to Italy.

29.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1. Are you playing tennis tomorrow? Yes, in the afternoon.
3. Are you going to get up early? Perhaps.
4. Are you working tomorrow? No, I'm not.
5. Will you be at home tomorrow morning? Maybe.
7. Are you going out in the afternoon? Yes, I am.

Now write about Bill. Use might where necessary.

1. He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
2. He might go out tomorrow evening.
3. He might be at home tomorrow morning.

29.4 Write three things that you **might** do tomorrow.
1. __________
2. __________
3. __________
can and could

**I can do something = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:**
- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian, but she can’t speak Spanish.
- ‘Can you swim?’ ‘Yes, but I’m not a very good swimmer.’
- ‘Can you change twenty pounds?’ ‘I’m sorry, I can’t.’
- I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel can’t come.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn’t:
- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Maria came to Britain, she couldn’t understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I couldn’t sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel couldn’t come.

**Can you ...? Could you ...? Can I ...? Could I ...?**

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:
- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ...?

We use Can I have ...? or Could I have ...? to ask for something:
- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have ...?

**Can I ...? or Could I ...? = is it OK to do something?:**
- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gary, please? or ... could I speak ...?
Exercises

30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

come find hear see speak

1. I'm sorry, but we can't come to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You hear the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I hear you.
4. Have you seen my bag? I find it.
5. Catherine got the job because she speaks five languages.

30.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go sleep

1. I was tired, but I couldn't sleep.
2. I wasn't hungry yesterday. I ate my dinner.
3. Kate doesn't know what to do. She didn't know what to do.
4. I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I didn't speak to him.
5. James didn't go to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Paula didn't go to the meeting last week. She was ill.

30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use can or could.
must  mustn't  don't need to

must + infinitive (must do / must work etc.):

| l/we/you/they  he/she/it | must  do  go  see  eat etc. |

I must (do something) = I need to do it:
- I'm very hungry. I must eat something.
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
- The windows are very dirty. We must clean them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to ... (not must):
- I was very hungry. I had to eat something. (not I must eat)
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (not We must walk)

mustn't (= must not)

I mustn't (do something) = it is necessary not to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:
- I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- I mustn't forget to phone Jane.
  (= I must remember to phone her)
- Be happy! You mustn't be sad. (= don't be sad)
- You mustn't touch the pictures.
  (= don't touch the pictures)

don't need to

I don't need (to do something) = it is not necessary:
- I don't need to go yet. I can stay a little longer.
- You don't need to shout. I can hear you OK.

You can also say don't have to ...:
- I don't have to go yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare don't need to and mustn't:
- You don't need to go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn't go. You must stay here.
31.1 Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:

- be  - eat  - go  - learn  - meet  - wash  - win

1. I'm very hungry. I _______ eat _______ something.
2. Marilyn is a very interesting person. You _______ meet her.
3. My hands are dirty. I _______ wash _______.
4. You _______ go _______ to drive. It will be very useful.
5. I _______ go _______ to the post office. I need some stamps.
6. The game tomorrow is very important for us. We _______ win _______.
7. You can't always have things immediately. You _______ be patient.

31.2 Write I must or I had to.

1. I _______ walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I _______ go now.
3. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I _______ work.
4. I _______ get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
5. I went to London by train last week. The train was full and I _______ stand all the way.
6. I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. I _______ run to get there on time.
7. I _______ phone him later today. I forgot to phone David yesterday. I _______ phone David, but I _______ them, for me. You can _______ him — I can send him an email.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use mustn't or don't need to + one of these verbs:

- forget  - go  - hurry  - lose  - phone  - wait

1. I _______ go _______ home yet. I can stay a little longer.
2. We have a lot of time. We _______ stay until the end.
3. Keep these papers in a safe place. You _______ lose them.
4. I'm not ready yet, but you _______ hurry _______ for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5. We _______ turn off the lights before we leave.
6. I _______ phone David, but I _______ him — I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

1. We can leave the meeting early.
2. We must leave the meeting early.
3. We mustn't leave the meeting early.
4. We had to leave the meeting early.
5. We don't need to leave the meeting early.

A. We must stay until the end.
B. We couldn't stay until the end.
C. We can't stay until the end.
D. We can stay until the end.
E. We don't need to stay until the end.

31.5 Write must / mustn't / had to / don't need to.

1. You _______ go. You can stay here if you want.
2. It's a fantastic film. You _______ see it.
3. The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We _______ reserve a table.
4. I was very busy last week. I _______ work every evening.
5. I want to know what happened. You _______ tell me.
6. You _______ tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know.
7. I _______ hurry or I'll be late.
8. 'Why were you so late?' 'I _______ wait half an hour for a bus.'
9. We _______ decide now. We can decide later.
10. It's Lisa's birthday next week. I _______ forget to buy her a present.
You should do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
- Tom doesn't study enough. He should study harder.
- It's a good film. You should go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you should always watch the ball.

You shouldn't do something = it is not a good thing to do.
Shouldn't = should not:
- Tom shouldn't go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You shouldn't watch TV so much.

We often say I think ... should ...

I think ... should ...:
- I think Lisa should buy some new clothes. (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. I think I should go home now.

A: Shall I buy this coat?
B: Yes, I think you should.

I don't think ... should ...:
- I don't think you should work so hard. (= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- I don't think we should go yet. It's too early.

Do you think ... should ... ?:
- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- What time do you think we should go home?

Must is stronger than should:
- It's a good film. You should go and see it.
- It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.

Another way to say should is ought to:
- It's a good film. You ought to go and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Lisa ought to buy some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)
Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use you should + these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>It's late and you're very tired. plenty of fruit and vegetables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>If you have time, the Science Museum. It's very interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>When you're driving, a seat belt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>It's too far to walk from here to the station. a taxi.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use He/She shouldn't ... so ...

1. She shouldn't watch TV so much. |
2. He shouldn't eat too much. |
3. You shouldn't work too hard. |
4. You shouldn't drive too fast. |

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with Do you think I should ...

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket?
2. You can't drive. (learn?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should learn to drive?
3. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should get another job?
4. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should invite Gary?

32.4 Write sentences with I think ... should ... and I don’t think ... should ...

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) I think we should go home now.
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) I don’t think you should buy it.
3. You don't need your car. (sell it) I don't think you should sell it.
4. Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday) I think she should have a holiday.
5. Sally and Dan are too young. (get married) I don’t think they should get married.
6. You're not well this morning. (go to work) I think you shouldn't go to work.
7. James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) I don’t think he should go to the doctor.
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) I think we shouldn't stay there.

32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with should.

1. I think everybody should learn another language.
2. I think everybody
3. I think
4. I don’t think
5. I think I should
I have to ...

This is my medicine.
I have to take it three times a day.

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to do work</th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has to</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>go to wear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>have to ...</th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it doesn't have to...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>have to ...</th>
<th>I/we/you/they didn't have to...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jane have to work on Sundays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:
- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

**Must and have to**

You can use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must). Compare:
- Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor.
  (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she must go.
  (this is my personal opinion)

must / mustn't / don't need to → Unit 31
33.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>do</th>
<th>hit</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>travel</th>
<th>wear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>My eyes are not very good. I</td>
<td><strong>have to wear</strong></td>
<td>glasses.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>At the end of the course all the students</td>
<td><strong>have to take</strong></td>
<td>a test.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sarah is studying literature. She</td>
<td><strong>has to read</strong></td>
<td>a lot of books.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Albert doesn't understand much English. You</td>
<td><strong>have to speak</strong></td>
<td>very slowly to him.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kate is not often at home. She</td>
<td><strong>has to travel</strong></td>
<td>a lot in her job.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>In tennis you</td>
<td><strong>have to hit</strong></td>
<td>the ball over the net.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>answer</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>change</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>walk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>We</td>
<td><strong>had to walk</strong></td>
<td>home last night. There were no buses.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>It's late. I</td>
<td><strong>had to buy</strong></td>
<td>now. I'll see you tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I</td>
<td><strong>had to change</strong></td>
<td>some food.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>This train doesn't go all the way to London. You</td>
<td><strong>had to go</strong></td>
<td>at Bristol.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>We did an exam yesterday. We</td>
<td><strong>had to walk</strong></td>
<td>six questions out of ten.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow. What time **do you have to get up**?
2. George had to wait a long time. How long **did he have to wait**?
3. Liz has to go somewhere. Where **does she have to go**?
4. We had to pay a lot of money. How much **did you have to pay**?
5. I have to do some work. What exactly **do you have to do**?

33.4 Write sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't have to ...

1. Why are you going out? You  | **don't have to go out**. |
2. Why is Sue waiting? She  | **doesn't have to wait**. |
3. Why did you get up early? You  | **didn't have to get up**. |
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He  | **doesn't have to work so hard**. |
5. Why do you want to leave now? We  | **don't have to leave**. |

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

1. It's a fantastic film. You  | **must see** / have to see it. (both are correct) |
2. Julia won't be at work this afternoon. She  | **has to go** / **must go** to the doctor. (has to go is correct) |
3. You can't park your car here for nothing. You  | **must pay** / have to pay. |
4. I didn't have any money with me last night, so I  | **must borrow** / **had to borrow** some. |
5. I eat too much chocolate. I really  | must stop / **have to stop**. |
6. Paul is in a hurry. He  | **must meet** / **has to meet** somebody in five minutes. |
7. What's wrong? You  | **must tell** / **have to tell** me. I want to help you. |

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1. (every day)  | **I have to travel ten miles every day**. |
2. (every day)  | **I have to travel ten miles every day**. |
3. (yesterday)  | **I must have traveled ten miles yesterday**. |
4. (tomorrow)  | **I will have to travel ten miles tomorrow**. |
Would you like ... ? = Do you want ... ?

We use Would you like ... ? to offer things:
- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.

We use Would you like to ... ? to invite somebody:
- A: Would you like to go for a walk?
  B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?

I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. I'd like = I would like:
- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd like to stay at home this evening.

Would you like ... ? and Do you like ... ?

Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...
- Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?
  A: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
    (= do you want to go tonight?)
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like an orange, please.
  (= can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like ... ? / I like ...
- Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?
  A: Do you like going to the cinema? (in general)
  B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (in general)
  A: What do you like to do at weekends?
  B: No, thank you. Not now.
Exercises

Unit 34

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ... ?

1. Would you like a chocolate?

2. Would you like tea?

3. Would you like coffee?

4. Would you like ice cream?

5. Would you like sandwiches?

6. Would you like coffee?

34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

1. You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
   You say: Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?

3. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
   You say: Would you like to come to the concert?

4. It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

34.3 Which is right?

1. Do you like / Would you like a chocolate? ‘Yes, please.’ (Would you like is right)
2. Do you like / Would you like bananas? ‘Yes, I love them.’
3. ‘Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?’ ‘No, thank you.’
4. ‘What do you like / would you like to drink?’ ‘A glass of water, please.’
5. ‘Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?’ ‘Not now. Perhaps later.’
6. I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
8. ‘Do you like / Would you like something to eat?’ ‘No, thanks. I'm not hungry.’
9. ‘Do you like / Would you like your new job?’ ‘Yes, I'm enjoying it.’
10. I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
11. ‘I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.’ ‘Sure. What kind of sandwich?’
12. ‘What kind of music do you like / would you like?’ ‘All kinds.’
We use come/look/go/wait/do/be etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- ‘Come here and look at this!’ ‘What is it?’
- I don’t want to talk to you. Go away!
- I’m not ready yet. Please wait for me.
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

Also

- Bye! Have a good holiday! / Have a nice time! / Have a good flight! / Have fun!
  (= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- ‘Have a chocolate.’ ‘Oh, thanks.’
  (= would you like a chocolate?)

We use don’t ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! Don’t fall.
- Please don’t go. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. Don’t be late.

You can say Let’s ... when you want people to do things with you. Let’s = Let us.

- It’s a nice day. Let’s go out.
  (= you and I can go out)
- Come on! Let’s dance.
  (= you and I can dance)
- Are you ready? Let’s go.
- Let’s have fish for dinner tonight.
- A: Shall we go out tonight?
  B: No, I’m tired. Let’s stay at home.

The negative is Let’s not ... :

- It’s cold. Let’s not go out. Let’s stay at home.
- Let’s not have fish for dinner tonight. Let’s have chicken.

Or you can say Don’t let’s ... :

- It’s cold. Don’t let’s go out. Let’s stay at home.
35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come etc.) and some are negative (don’t buy / don’t come etc.). Use these verbs: be buy come drink drop forget have sit sleep smile

1. Come _______ in!
2. Don’t drink _______ the water!
3. It’s too expensive. _______ it.
4. OK, are you ready? _______!
5. ………………… on the cat!
6. Bye! ………………… a nice time!
7. ………………… to phone me.
8. ………………… well.
9. ………………… careful with that vase. ………………… it!

Don’t worry, I won’t.

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use let’s with:

- go for a swim
- go to a restaurant
- take a taxi
- wait a little
- watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis? No, let’s go for a swim
2. Do you want to walk home? No, …………………
3. Shall I put a CD on? No, …………………
4. Shall we have dinner at home? No, …………………
5. Would you like to go now? No, …………………

35.3 Answer with No, don’t … or No, let’s not …

1. Shall I wait for you? No, don’t wait for me.
2. Shall we go home now? No, let’s not go home yet.
3. Shall we go out? …………………
4. Do you want me to close the window? …………………
5. Shall I phone you tonight? …………………
6. Do you think we should wait for Andy? …………………
7. Do you want me to turn on the light? …………………
8. Shall we go by bus? …………………
Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn’t work there now:

| Past: he used to work | Now: he works |

You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / you / we / they</th>
<th>used to</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don’t read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we used to see them a lot. But we don’t see them very often these days.
- Helen used to have a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn’t use to … :

- When I was a child, I didn’t use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to ... ?:

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use used to … only for the past. You cannot say ‘I use to …’ for the present:

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early)
36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to ...

1. She used to have long hair.
2. He used to play football.
3. I used to be a hairdresser now.
4. We used to live in London now.
5. This is me 20 years ago. I never wear glasses now.
6. This building used to be an inn.

36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago

Do you do any sport? Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much? Yes, most evenings.
Do you play a musical instrument? Yes, the guitar.
Do you like reading? Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much? Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Karen now

I work very hard in my job. I don’t have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with used to ...

1. She used to swim every day.
2. She used to have long hair.
3. She used to go out much.
4. She used to play a musical instrument.
5. She used to like reading.
6. She used to travel much.

36.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

1. I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. ‘Do you do any sport?’ ‘Yes, I play basketball.’
3. ‘Have you got a car?’ ‘No, I used to have one, but I sold it.’
4. George used to be a waiter. Now he’s the manager of a hotel.
5. ‘Do you go to work by car?’ ‘Sometimes, but most days I go by train.’
6. When I was a child, I never used to eat meat, but I eat it now.
7. Mary loves watching TV. She used to watch TV every evening.
8. We used to live near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
9. Normally I start work at 7 o’clock, so I used to get up very early.
10. What games did you used to play when you were a child?
there is  there are

singular

there is ...  (there's)
is there ... ?
there is not ...  (there isn't or there's not)

plural

there are ...
are there ... ?
there are not ...  (there aren't)

There's a man on the roof.  There's a train at 10.30.  There are seven days in a week.

There's a big tree in the garden.
There's nothing on TV tonight.
A: Have you got any money?
   B: Yes, there's some in my bag.
A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
   B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

There are some big trees in the garden.
There are a lot of accidents on this road.
A: Are there any restaurants near here?
   B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
How many players are there in a football team?
There are 11 players in a football team.

A: What's that noise? "It's a train." (It = that noise)
   There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (It = the 10.30 train)
A: There's a lot of salt in this soup.
   I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (It = this soup)

There's a book on the table.
I like this book. It's interesting.
(Not: It's a book on the table.)
37.1 Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with There is/are or There isn’t/aren’t.

| 1. a castle? | No | 1. There isn’t a castle. |
| 2. any restaurants? | Yes (a lot) | 2. There are a lot of restaurants. |
| 3. a hospital? | Yes | 3. |
| 4. a swimming pool? | No | 4. |
| 5. any cinemas? | Yes (two) | 5. |
| 7. any big hotels? | No | 7. |

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use There is/are or There isn’t/aren’t.

1. There are a few restaurants.
2. There’s a big park.
3. There are some old buildings.
4. There isn’t a library.
5. There are a lot of shops.
6. There isn’t a train station.
7. There are many supermarkets.

37.3 Write there is / there isn’t / is there or there are / there aren’t / are there.

1. Kentham isn’t an old town. There aren’t any old buildings.
2. Look! There’s a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
3. ‘Excuse me, a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at the end of the street.’
4. There are five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5. ‘How many students in the class?’ ‘Twenty.’
6. The road is usually very quiet. Much traffic.
7. There is a bus from the city centre to the airport? ‘Yes, every 20 minutes.’
8. There aren’t any problems? ‘No, everything is OK.’
9. There isn’t nowhere to sit down. Any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with There are ... Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>seven</th>
<th>twenty-six</th>
<th>letters</th>
<th>days</th>
<th>September</th>
<th>the solar system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>players</td>
<td>days</td>
<td>the USA</td>
<td>a-week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>planets</td>
<td>states</td>
<td>a rugby team</td>
<td>the English alphabet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. There are seven days in a week.
2. There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
3. There are eighty letters in the English alphabet.
4. There are thirty players in the rugby team.
5. There are many states in the USA.
6. There is one planet in the solar system.

37.5 Write there’s / is there or it’s / is it.

1. There’s a train at 10.30. Is it a fast train?
2. I’m not going to buy this shirt. It’s too expensive.
3. ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘It’s something in my eye.’
4. There’s a red car outside your house. Is it yours?
5. ‘Is there anything good on TV tonight?’ ‘Yes, there’s a film at 8.15.’
6. ‘What’s that building?’ ‘It’s a school.’
7. ‘Is there a restaurant in this hotel?’ ‘No, I’m afraid not.’
there was/were there will be

there has/have been

there was / there were (past)

There is a train every hour.
The time now is 11.15.
There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)
- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel.
- There are 550 rooms.
- Are there any phone messages for me this morning?
- I'm hungry, but there isn't anything to eat.

there was/were (past)
- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel.
- There were 550 rooms.
- Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
- I was hungry when I got home, but there wasn't anything to eat.

there has been / there have been (present perfect)

- Look! There's been an accident.
  (there's been = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

Compare there was (past):
- There was an accident last night.
  (not There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

there will be

- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because there won't be time tomorrow.
  (there won't be = there will not be)
38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with There was ... or There were ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>an armchair</th>
<th>a carpet</th>
<th>some flowers</th>
<th>a sofa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some books</td>
<td>a clock</td>
<td>three pictures</td>
<td>a small table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. There was a clock on the wall near the window.
2. on the floor.
3. on the wall near the door.
4. in the middle of the room.
5. on the table.
6. on the shelves.
7. in the corner near the door.
8. opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write there was / there wasn’t / was there or there were / there weren’t / were there.

1. I was hungry, but there wasn’t anything to eat.
2. Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. I opened the envelope, but it was empty. nothing in it.
4. ‘We stayed at a very nice hotel.’ ‘Really? a swimming pool?’
5. ‘Did you buy any eggs?’ ‘No, any in the shop.’
6. The wallet was empty. any money in it.
7. ‘... many people at the meeting?’ ‘No, very few.’
8. We didn’t visit the museum. enough time.
9. I’m sorry I’m late. a lot of traffic.
10. Twenty years ago. many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.

1. There was a good film on TV last night.
2. 24 hours in a day.
3. a party at the club last Friday, but I didn’t go.
4. ‘Where can I buy a newspaper?’ ‘a shop at the end of the street.’
5. ‘Why are those policemen outside the bank?’ ‘a robbery.’
6. When we arrived at the theatre, a long queue outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, somebody at the station to meet you.
8. Ten years ago. 500 children at the school. Now
   more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It’s very different now.
   a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don’t think any problems.
We use *it* for time/day/distance/weather:

### time
- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

### day
- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

### distance
- It's three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use *far* in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far).

In positive sentences, we use a *long way* (it's a long way).

### weather
- It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday.
- Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare *it* and *there*:
- *It* rains a lot in winter.
- *There* is a lot of rain in winter.
- *It* was very windy.
- *There* was a strong wind yesterday.

### It's nice to ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It's</th>
<th>easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe</th>
<th>to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It's nice to see you again.
- It's impossible to understand her.
- It wasn't easy to find your house.

Don't forget *it*:
- It's raining again. (not Is raining again)
- Is it true that you're going away? (not Is true that ...)

there is → Unit 37
39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's ...

1. It's raining.
2. _____________________________
3. _____________________________
4. _____________________________
5. _____________________________
6. _____________________________

39.2 Write it is (it's) or is it.
1. What time __________ is it? __________
2. We must go now. __________________ very late.
3. __________________ true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. ‘What day __________ today? Tuesday?’ ‘No, __________ Wednesday.’
5. __________________ ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6. __________________ possible to phone you at your office?
7. ‘Do you want to walk to the hotel?’ ‘I don’t know. How far __________?’
8. __________________ Lisa’s birthday today. She’s 27.
9. I don’t believe it! __________________ impossible.

39.3 Write questions with How far ... ?
1. (here / the station) __________________ How far is it from here to the station?
2. (the hotel / the beach) __________________
3. (New York / Washington) __________________
4. (your house / the airport) __________________

39.4 Write it or there.
1. The weather isn’t so nice today. __________________ it’s cloudy.
2. __________________ was a strong wind yesterday.
3. __________________ is hot in this room. Open a window.
4. __________________ was a nice day yesterday. __________________ was warm and sunny.
5. __________________ was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6. I was afraid because __________________ was very dark.
7. __________________ is often cold here, but __________________ isn’t much rain.
8. __________________ is a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>it's</th>
<th>easy</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>to work in this office</th>
<th>get-up early</th>
<th>visit different places</th>
<th>go out alone</th>
<th>see you again</th>
<th>make friends</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. If you go to bed late, __________________ it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2. Hello, Jane. __________________ How are you?
3. __________________ There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. __________________
5. I like travelling. __________________
6. Some cities are not safe. __________________ at night.

89
I am, I don't etc.

She isn't tired, but he is.
(he is = he is tired)

He likes tea, but she doesn't.
(she doesn't = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ('he is tired', 'she doesn't like tea').

You can use these verbs in the same way:

- am/is/are
- was/were
- have/has
- do/does/did
- can
- will
- might
- must

You cannot use 'm / s / 've etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/ have etc.:
- She isn't tired, but he is. (not ... but he's)

But you can use isn't / haven't / won't etc. (negative short forms):
- My sister has got a car, but I haven't.
- 'Are you and Jane working tomorrow?' ‘I am, but Jane isn't.'

You can use I am / I'm not etc. after Yes and No:
- 'Are you tired?' ‘Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.’
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won't.’
- 'Is there a bus to the airport?' ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.’

We use do/does for the present simple (→ Units 6-7):
- I don't like hot weather, but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I don't. (= I don't work hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' ‘Yes, I do.’

We use did for the past simple (→ Unit 12):
- a: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?
  b: I did, but Chris didn't. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn't enjoy it)
- 'I had a good time.' ‘I did too.’ (= I enjoyed it too)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' ‘No, it didn't.'
40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.

1. Kate wasn’t hungry, but we ______.
2. I’m not married, but my brother ______.
3. Bill can’t help you, but I ______.
4. I haven’t seen the film, but Tom ______.
5. Karen won’t be here, but Chris ______.
6. You weren’t late, but I ______.

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/can’t etc.).

1. My sister can play the piano, but I ______.
2. Mark has been to China, but I ______.
3. I was working, but my friends ______.
4. Steve is happy today, but he ______.
5. The post office isn’t open yet, but the shops ______.
6. I didn’t enjoy the party, but my friends ______.
7. Kate lives in London, but her parents ______.
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I ______.

40.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.

1. I don’t like hot weather, but Sue ______.
2. Sue likes hot weather, but I ______.
3. My mother wears glasses, but my father ______.
4. You don’t know Paul very well, but I ______.
5. I didn’t enjoy the party, but my friends ______.
6. I don’t watch TV much, but Peter ______.
7. Kate lives in London, but her parents ______.
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I ______.

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1. I didn’t ______ last night, but my friends did.
2. I like ______, but ______.
3. I don’t ______, but ______.
4. I’m ______, but ______.
5. I haven’t ______.

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1. ‘Are you tired?’ ‘I ______ earlier, but I’m not now.’
2. Steve is happy today, but he ______ yesterday.
3. The post office isn’t open yet, but the shops ______.
4. I haven’t got a telescope, but I know somebody who ______.
5. I would like to help you, but I’m afraid I ______.
6. I don’t usually go to work by car, but I ______ yesterday.
7. A: Have you ever been to the United States? 
   B: No, but Sandra ______. She went there on holiday last year.
8. ‘Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?’ ‘I ______, but Chris doesn’t.’
9. I’ve been invited to Sam’s wedding, but Kate ______.
10. ‘Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?’ ‘Yes, I’m sure she ______.’
11. ‘Are you going out tonight?’ ‘I ______. I don’t know for sure.’

40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I’m not. etc.

1. Are you American? __________ No, I’m not.
2. Have you got a car? __________
3. Do you feel OK? __________
4. Is it snowing? __________
5. Are you hungry? __________
6. Do you like classical music? __________
7. Will you be in Paris tomorrow? __________
8. Have you ever broken your arm? __________
9. Did you buy anything yesterday? __________
10. Were you asleep at 3 a.m.? __________

91
Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

You can say have you? / is it? / can't he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:
- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use do/does for the present simple, and did for the past simple:
- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'
- 'Tim doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Nicole got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

Question tags

You can use have you? / is it? / can't she? etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are question tags.

positive sentence → negative question tag

- It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
- Sally lives in London, doesn't she?
- You closed the window, didn't you?
- Those shoes are nice, aren't they?
- Tom will be here soon, won't he?

negative sentence → positive question tag

- That isn't your car, is it?
- You haven't met my mother, have you?
- Sally doesn't go out much, does she?
- You won't be late, will you?

No, it's my mother's.
No, I haven't.
No, she doesn't.
No, I'm never late.
Exercises

41.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn’t she? / Did they? etc.

1. I speak four languages.
2. I work in a bank.
3. I didn’t go to work yesterday.
4. Jane doesn’t like me.
5. You look tired.
6. Kate phoned me last night.

7. Do you? Which ones?
8. I work in a bank too.
9. Were you ill?
10. Why not?
11. I feel fine.
12. What did she say?

41.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven’t you? / Did she? / Didn’t she? etc.

1. I’ve bought a new car.
2. Tim doesn’t eat meat.
3. I’ve lost my key.
4. Sue can’t drive.
5. I was born in Italy.
6. I didn’t sleep well last night.
7. There’s a film on TV tonight.
8. I’m not happy.
9. I saw Paula last week.
10. Maria works in a factory.
11. I won’t be here next week.
12. The clock isn’t working.

13. Have you? What make is it?
14. Doesn’t he? Does he eat fish?
15. When did you last have it?
16. She should learn.
17. I didn’t know that.
18. Was the bed uncomfortable?
19. Are you going to watch it?
20. Why not?
21. How is she?
22. What kind of factory?
23. Where will you be?
24. It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn’t it? / haven’t you? etc.).

1. It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?
2. These flowers are nice, aren’t they?
3. Jane was at the party, wasn’t she?
4. You’ve been to Paris, haven’t you?
5. You speak German, don’t you?
6. Martin looks tired, doesn’t he?
7. You’ll help me, will you?

18. Yes, it’s perfect.
19. Yes, what are they?
20. Yes, but I didn’t speak to her.
21. Yes, many times.
22. Yes, but not very well.
23. Yes, he works very hard.
24. Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn’t it? / don’t you? etc.).

1. You haven’t got a car, have you?
2. You aren’t tired, are you?
3. Lisa is a very nice person, isn’t she?
4. You can play the piano, can’t you?
5. You don’t know Mike’s sister, do you?
6. Sarah went to university, didn’t she?
7. The film wasn’t very good, was it?
8. Anna lives near you, doesn’t she?
9. You won’t tell anybody what I said, will you?

20. No, I can’t drive.
21. No, I feel fine.
22. Yes, everybody likes her.
23. Yes, but I’m not very good.
24. No, I’ve never met her.
25. Yes, she studied psychology.
26. No, it was terrible.
27. That’s right. In the same street.
28. No, of course not.
too/either  so am I / neither do I etc.

too and either

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

- **We use too** after a *positive* verb:
  - A: I'm happy.
  - B: I'm happy too.
- **We use either** after a *negative* verb:
  - A: I'm not happy.
  - B: I'm not happy either.

example:
- A: I enjoyed the film.
  - B: I enjoyed it too.
- A: Jane is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor too.
  - B: I can't cook.
  - B: I can't either. (not I can't too)
- B: Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers either.

so am I / neither do I etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>so am I</strong> = I am too</th>
<th><strong>neither am I</strong> = I am not either</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>so have I</strong> = I have too</td>
<td><strong>neither have I</strong> = I have not either</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: I'm working.</td>
<td>A: I haven't got a key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: So am I. ( = I'm working too)</td>
<td>B: Neither have I. ( = I haven't either)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: I was late for work today.</td>
<td>A: Kate can't cook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: So was Sam. ( = Sam was late too)</td>
<td>B: Neither can Tom. ( = Tom can't either)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: I work in a bank.</td>
<td>A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: So do I.</td>
<td>B: Neither will I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: We went to the cinema last night.</td>
<td>A: I never go to the cinema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Did you? So did we.</td>
<td>B: Neither do I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: I'd like to go to Australia.</td>
<td>You can also use <em>Nor</em> (= Neither):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: So would I.</td>
<td>A: I'm not married.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember: **So am I** *(not So I am)*, **Neither have I** *(not Neither I have)*.

*I am / I don't etc. → Unit 40*
42.1 Write too or either.

1. I'm happy.  
2. I'm not hungry.  
3. I'm going out.  
4. It rained on Saturday.  
5. Jenny can't drive a car.  
6. I don't like shopping.  
7. Emma's mother is a teacher.

42.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night.  
2. I'm thirsty.  
3. I've just had dinner.  
4. I need a holiday.  
5. I'll be late tomorrow.  
6. I was very tired this morning.

Answer with Neither ... I.

7. I can't go to the party.  
8. I didn't phone Alex last night.  
9. I haven't got any money.  
10. I'm not going out tomorrow.  
11. I don't know what to do.

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

Maria: I'm tired today.  
I don't work hard.

You can answer: So am I.  
Or I'm not.

You can answer: Neither do I.  
Or I do.

1. I'm learning English.  
2. I can ride a bicycle.  
3. I'm not American.  
4. I like cooking.  
5. I don't like cold weather.  
6. I slept well last night.  
7. I've never been to Scotland.  
8. I don't use my phone much.  
9. I'm going out tomorrow evening.  
10. I haven't got a headache.  
11. I didn't watch TV last night.  
12. I go to the cinema a lot.
isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

We use *not* (n't) in negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>am <em>not</em> (<em>'m not</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is <em>not</em> (isn't or 's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are <em>not</em> (aren't or 're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was <em>not</em> (wasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were <em>not</em> (weren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have <em>not</em> (haven't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has <em>not</em> (hasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will <em>not</em> (won't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>can <em>not</em> (can't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could <em>not</em> (couldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must <em>not</em> (mustn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should <em>not</em> (shouldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would <em>not</em> (wouldn't)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm not tired.
- It *isn't* (or It's not) raining.
- They *aren't* (or They're not) here.
- Julian wasn't hungry.
- The shops *weren't* open.
- I haven't finished my work.
- Sue hasn't got a car.
- We won't be here tomorrow.
- George can't drive.
- I couldn't sleep last night.
- I mustn't forget to phone Jane.
- You shouldn't work so hard.
- I wouldn't like to be an actor.

**don't/doesn't/didn't**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple negative</th>
<th>I/we/you/they do not (don't)</th>
<th>he/she/it does not (doesn't)</th>
<th>work/live/go etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple negative</td>
<td>I/they/he/she etc. did not (didn't)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### present simple negative vs. negative

- I *want* to go out.  →  I *don't* want to go out.
- They *work* hard. →  They *don't* work hard.
- Liz *plays* the guitar.  →  Liz *doesn't* play the guitar.
- My father *likes* his job.  →  My father *doesn't like* his job.
- I *got* up early this morning.  →  I *didn't* get up early this morning.
- They *worked* hard yesterday.  →  They *didn't* work hard yesterday.
- We *played* tennis.  →  We *didn't* play tennis.
- Diane *had* dinner with us.  →  Diane *didn't* have dinner with us.

Don't ...

- Look!  →  Don't look!
- Wait for me.  →  Don't wait for me.

Sometimes *do* is the main verb (*don't do / doesn't do / didn't do*):

- Do something!  →  Don't do anything!
- Sue *does* a lot at weekends.  →  Sue *doesn't do* much at weekends.
- I *did* what you said.  →  I *didn't do* what you said.
Exercises

Unit 43

43.1 Make these sentences negative.
1. He's gone away. **He hasn't gone away.**
2. They're married. **They aren't married.**
3. I've had dinner. **I haven't had dinner.**
4. It's cold today. **It isn't cold today.**
5. We'll be late. **We won't be late.**
6. You should go. **You shouldn't go.**

43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don't/doesn't/didn't.
1. She saw me. **She didn't see me.**
2. I like cheese. **I don't like cheese.**
3. They understood. **They didn't understand.**
4. She swam. **She didn't swim.**
5. Go away! **Don't go away.**
6. I did the shopping. **I didn't do the shopping.**

43.3 Make these sentences negative.
1. She can swim. **She can't swim.**
2. They've arrived. **They haven't arrived.**
3. I went to the bank. **I didn't go to the bank.**
4. He speaks German. **He doesn't speak German.**
5. We were angry. **We weren't angry.**
6. He'll be pleased. **He won't be pleased.**
7. Phone me tonight. **Don't phone me tonight.**
8. It rained yesterday. **It didn't rain yesterday.**
9. I could hear them. **I couldn't hear them.**
10. I believe you. **I don't believe you.**

43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't etc.).
1. They aren't rich. They **haven't** got much money.
2. 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I **don't** hungry.'
3. I **haven't** find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4. Steve **hasn't** use email much. He prefers to talk on the phone.
5. We can walk to the station from here. It **isn't** very far.
6. 'Where's Jane?' 'I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen her today.'
7. Be careful! **Don't** fall!
8. We went to the cinema last night. I **didn't** like the film very much.
9. I've been to Japan many times, but I **haven't** been to Korea.
10. Julia **isn't** be here tomorrow. She's going away.
11. 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I **don't** do it.'
12. We didn't see what happened. We **haven't** looking at the time.
13. Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she **haven't** worn it yet.
14. You **don't** drive so fast. It's dangerous.

43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers 'Yes' or 'No.' Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

You

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>No. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live in London?</td>
<td>Yes. 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were you born in London?</td>
<td>No. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like London?</td>
<td>No. 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like to live in the country?</td>
<td>Yes. 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you drive?</td>
<td>Yes. 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
<td>No. 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you read newspapers?</td>
<td>No. 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in politics?</td>
<td>No. 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you watch TV most evenings?</td>
<td>Yes. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you watch TV last night?</td>
<td>No. 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you go out last night?</td>
<td>Yes. 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You are eating.</td>
<td>Are you eating? What are you eating?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where has David gone? (not Where has gone David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (not Are waiting ... ?)
- When was the telephone invented? (not When was invented ... ?)

**do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple Questions</th>
<th>Do</th>
<th>Work/live/go etc. ... ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they do</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it does</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>She</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Simple Questions</th>
<th>Did</th>
<th>Have for dinner?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/they/he/she etc. did</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They work hard.</td>
<td>Do they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You watch television.</td>
<td>How often do you watch television?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris works hard.</td>
<td>Does Chris work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She gets up early.</td>
<td>What time does she get up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard.</td>
<td>Did they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You had dinner.</td>
<td>What did you have for dinner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She got up early.</td>
<td>What time did she get up?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):

- What do you usually do at weekends?
- What does your brother do? 'He works in a bank.'
- I broke my finger last week. How did you do that? (not How did you that?)

**Why isn’t ... ? / Why don’t ... ? etc. (Why + negative):**

- Where’s John? Why isn’t he here? (not Why he isn’t here?)
- Why can’t Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can’t ... ?)
- Why didn’t you phone me last night?
### Exercises

#### 44.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim.  
   (and you?) Can you swim?
2. I work hard.  
   (and Jack?) Does Jack work hard?
3. I was late this morning.  
   (and you?)
4. I've got a key.  
   (and Kate?)
5. I'll be here tomorrow.  
   (and you?)
6. I'm going out this evening.  
   (and Paul?)
7. I like my job.  
   (and you?)
8. I live near here.  
   (and Nicole?)
9. I enjoyed the film.  
   (and you?)
10. I had a good holiday.  
   (and you?)

#### 44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Full Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 (have / a car?)</td>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (use / a lot?)</td>
<td>It</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (use / yesterday?)</td>
<td>(enjoy driving?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (a good driver?)</td>
<td>(ever / have / an accident?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)</td>
<td>What</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 (leave / what time / your train / does?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes, I have.  
Yes, nearly every day.  
Yes, to go to work.  
Not very much.  
I think I am.  
No, never.

#### 44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Full Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 (has / gone / where / David?)</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (working / Rachel / is / today?)</td>
<td>Is Rachel working today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (the children / what / are / doing?)</td>
<td>What</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (made / is / how / cheese?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)</td>
<td>What</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 (leave / what time / your train / does?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn’t?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 44.4 Complete the questions.

1. I want to go out.  
   Where do you want to go?
2. Kate and Paul aren’t going to the party.  
   Why aren’t they going?
3. I’m reading.  
   What
4. Sue went to bed early.  
   What time
5. My parents are going on holiday.  
   When
6. I saw Tom a few days ago.  
   Where
7. I can’t come to the party.  
   Where
8. Tina has gone away.  
   Why
9. I need some money.  
   How much
10. Angela doesn’t like me.  
    How often
11. It rains sometimes.  
    Why
12. I did the shopping.  
   When
Who saw you?  Who did you see?
(questions 2)

Silvia saw Paul.
Who saw Paul?
Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

Who did Silvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

In these questions, who/what is the subject:
- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it — who?)
  (not Who does live?)
- What happened? (= something happened — what?)
  (not What did happen?)
- What’s happening? (What’s = What is)
- Who’s got my key? (Who’s = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:
- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody — who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something — what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Silvia wearing?

Compare:
- George likes oranges.  →  Who likes oranges? — George.
  What does George like? — Oranges.

Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):
- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?
Exercises

45.1 Make questions with who or what. In these questions, who/what is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
   Who broke the window?
   Something fell off the shelf.
   Somebody wants to see you.
   Somebody took my umbrella.
   Something made me ill.

45.2 Make questions with who or what (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
   What did you buy?
   Somebody lives in this house.
   Who lives in this house?
   I phoned somebody.
   Who phoned you?
   Something happened last night.
   What happened?
   Somebody knows the answer.
   Who knows the answer?
   Somebody did the washing-up.
   Who did the washing-up?
   Jane did something.
   What did Jane do?
   Something woke me up.
   Who woke you?
   Somebody saw the accident.
   Who saw the accident?
   I saw somebody.
   Who did you see?
   Somebody has got my pen.
   What have you got?
   This word means something.

45.3 You want the missing information (XXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. I lost XXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXX found it and gave it back to me.
   What did you lose?
   Who found it?

2. XXXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXXX.
   Who phoned you?
   What

3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX. He said XXXX.
   Who asked?
   What

4. I hear that XXXX got married last week. XXXX told me.

5. I met XXXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXXX.

6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXX won. After the game we XXXX.

7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXXX.
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who ... ? / What ... ? / Where ... ? / Which ... ?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'Jack was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with?' / 'Who is she going with?'
- 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. What do you want to talk about?'

What's it like? What are they like? etc.

What's it like? = What is it like?
What's it like? = tell me something about it — is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say 'What is it like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like ('Do you like your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
  B: What's it like? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

- A: What's your new teacher like?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

- A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
  B: Did you? What are they like?
  A: They're very nice.

- A: Did you have a good holiday? What was the weather like?
  B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.
46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. The letter is from XXXXX. Who is the letter from?
2. I'm looking for a XXXXX. What ____________ you ________________
3. I went to the cinema with XXXXX. ________________
4. The film was about XXXXX. ________________
5. I gave the money to XXXXX. ________________
6. The book was written by XXXXX. ________________

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:
go listen look talk talk wait

1. Who is she talking to? 4. What ________________
2. What ____________________________ 5. What ____________________________
3. Which restaurant ____________________________ 6. Which bus ____________________________

46.3 Write questions beginning Which ... ?

1. Tom’s father is in hospital. Which hospital is he in?
2. We stayed at a hotel. ________________
3. Jack plays for a football team. ________________
4. I went to school in this town. ________________

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are ... like?

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?
2. (the food) ____________________________
3. (the people) ____________________________
4. (the weather) ____________________________

46.5 Ask questions with What was/were ... like?

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
   What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
   ____________________________
3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
   ____________________________
4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
What ... ?   Which ... ?   How ... ?
(questions 4)

What + noun (What colour ... ? / What kind ... ? etc.)
- What colour is your car?
- What size is this shirt?
- What time is it?
- What kind of job do you want?
  (or What type of job ... ? / What sort of job ... ?)

What without a noun:
- What's your favourite colour?
- What do you want to do tonight?

Which + noun (things or people):
- Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which doctor did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use which without a noun for things, not people:
- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use who for people (without a noun):
- Who is taller – Joe or Gary? (not Which is taller?)

What or which?

We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):
- We can go this way or that way. Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours?

What is more general:
- What's the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What sort of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:
- What colour are his eyes? (not Which colour?)
- Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

How ... ?

- 'How was the party last night?'  'It was great.'
- 'How do you usually go to work?'  'By bus.'

You can use how + adjective/adverb (how tall / how old / how often etc.):

| How        | tall are you? | I'm 1 metre 70.  |
|            | big is the house? | Not very big.    |
|            | old is your mother? | She's 45.        |
|            | far is it from here to the airport? | Five kilometres. |
|            | often do you use your car? | Every day.       |
|            | long have they been married? | Ten years.       |
|            | much was the meal? | Thirty pounds.   |

questions → Units 44–46   How long does it take ... ? → Unit 48   which one(s) → Unit 75
47.1 Write questions with what.

1. I've got a new TV set. (make?) What make is it?
2. I want a job. (kind?) What kind of job do you want?
3. I've got a new sweater. (colour?) What ... get up?
4. I got up early this morning. (time?) ... get up?
5. I like music. (type?) ... music?
6. I want to buy a car. (kind?) What kind of car do you want?

47.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ...

1. Which way shall we go? (near?) is it near the station?
2. Which is yours? (enough?) is it enough?
3. Which do you want to see? (late?) is it late?
4. Does it go to the centre? (early) is it early?

47.3 Write what/which/who.

1. What is that man's name? (widow?) is it a widow?
2. Which way shall we go? (near) is it near?
3. You can have tea or coffee. (san) do you prefer?
4. What day is it today? ‘Friday.’ (sport) is it a sport?
5. This is a nice office. (grand) desk is yours?
6. What is your favourite sport? (marry) is it married?
7. Which is more expensive, meat or fish? (kind) is it kind?
8. Which is older, Liz or Steve? (stayed) is it stayed?
9. What kind of camera have you got? (kind) is it kind?
10. A: I've got three cameras. (age) is it age?
    B: Which camera do you use most? (kind) is it kind?
11. What nationality are you? (type) is it type?

47.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc).

2. How far is it to the station? It's about two kilometres from here.
3. How old is Helen? She's 26.
4. How often do the buses run? Every ten minutes.
5. How deep is the water in the pool? Two metres.
6. How long have you lived here? Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with How ...?

1. Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80? How tall are you?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? (age) is it age?
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 23? (age) is it age?
4. Did you spend £20? £30? £50? (time) is it time?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? (time) is it time?
6. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000? (time) is it time?
How long does it take from ... to ... ?

- How long does it take by plane from New York to Washington?
  - It takes an hour.

How long does it take to do something?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long does it take to do something?</th>
<th>It takes</th>
<th>It took</th>
<th>It will take</th>
<th>a week</th>
<th>a long time</th>
<th>three hours</th>
<th>to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How long did it take you to read the</td>
<td>doesn't</td>
<td>didn't</td>
<td>won't</td>
<td>to ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book?</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>long</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.
- It won't take long to fix the computer.

How long does it take you to do something?

- I started reading the book on Monday. I finished it on Wednesday evening.
- It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took us an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.
48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ...

1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2. ____________________________
3. ____________________________
4. ____________________________

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to London
   It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.
2. fly from your city/country to New York
3. study to be a doctor in your country
4. walk from your home to the nearest shop
5. get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with How long did it take ...

1. (Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?
2. (I walked to the station.) How long did it take you ...
3. (Tom painted the bathroom.) How long did it take you ...
4. (I learnt to ski.) How long did it take you ...
5. (They repaired the computer.) How long did it take them ...

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It took ...

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.  
   It took me three days to read the book.
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o’clock and we arrived home at 10.20.
3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
5. Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
6. Write a sentence about yourself.
Do you know where ... ?
I don't know what ... etc.

We say:

Where is Paula?

but Do you know where Paula is?
(not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know
I don't know where Paula is.
Can you tell me

Compare:

Who are those people?
How old is Nicole?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you going away?
Where have they gone?
What was Kate wearing?

Questions with do/does/did (present simple and past simple)

Where does he live?

but Do you know where he lives? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How do aeroplanes fly?
What does Jane want?
Why did she go home?
Where did I put the key?

Questions beginning Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ? etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

You can use if or whether in these sentences:

☐ Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether they've got a car?
☐ I don't know if anybody saw me. or I don't know whether anybody saw me.
Exercises

49.1 Answer these questions with I don't know where/when/why ... etc.

I don't know where they've gone.

1. Have your friends gone home?
2. Is Kate in her office?
3. Is the castle very old?
4. Will Paul be here soon?
5. Was he angry because I was late?
6. Has Sally lived here a long time?

49.2 Complete the sentences.

1. (How do aeroplanes fly?) Do you know how aeroplanes fly?
2. (Where does Susan work?) I don't know where Susan works.
3. (What did Peter say?) Do you remember what Peter said?
4. (Why did he go home early?) I don't know why he went home early.
5. (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know what time the meeting begins?
6. (How did the accident happen?) I don't know how the accident happened.

49.3 Which is right?

1. Do you know what time it is? (Do you know what time it is? is right)
2. Why are you / you are going away?
3. I don't know where are they / they are going.
4. Can you tell me where the museum / the museum is?
5. Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
6. Do you know what elephants eat / elephants eat?
7. I don't know how far it is / it is from the hotel to the station.

49.4 Write questions with Do you know if ... ?

1. (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they've got a car?
2. (Are they married?) Do you know if they're married?
3. (Does Sue know Bill?) Do you know if Sue knows Bill?
4. (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) Do you know if Gary will be here tomorrow?
5. (Did he pass his exam?) Do you know if he passed his exam?

49.5 Write questions beginning Do you know ... ?

1. (What does Laura want?) Do you know what Laura wants?
2. (Where is Paula?) Do
3. (Is she working today?)
4. (What time does she start work?)
5. (Are the shops open tomorrow?)
6. (Where do Sarah and Tim live?)
7. (Did they go to Jane's party?)

49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Do you know why the bus was late?
2. Do you know what time?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where?
4. I don't know what?
5. Do you know if?
6. Do you know how much?
She said that ...  He told me that ...

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DIANE</td>
<td>I'm enjoying my new job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARAH</td>
<td>We're going to buy a house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PETER</td>
<td>I have to leave early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KATE</td>
<td>I can't find a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEVE</td>
<td>I'll phone you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACHEL</td>
<td>I don't like my job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIKE</td>
<td>You look tired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DIANE</td>
<td>She was enjoying her new job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARAH</td>
<td>Her father wasn't well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PETER</td>
<td>He had to leave early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KATE</td>
<td>She couldn't find a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEVE</td>
<td>He would phone me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACHEL</td>
<td>She didn't like her job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIKE</td>
<td>I looked tired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**say and tell**

**say** (→ said)
- He said that he was tired.
  (not He said me)
- What did she say to you?
  (not say you)

We say he said to me, I said to Ann etc. but not 'he said me', 'I said Ann'.

**tell** (→ told)
- He told me that he was tired.
  (not He told that)
- What did she tell you?
  (not tell to you)

We say he told me, I told Ann etc. but not 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann'.

You can say:
- He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. (without that)
- Kate told me that she couldn't find a job. or Kate told me she couldn't find a job.
50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) ...

1. He said he had lost his watch.
2. I'm very busy.
3. I can't go to the party.
4. I have to go out.
5. I'm learning Russian.
6. I don't feel very well.
7. We'll be home late.
8. I've just come back from holiday.
9. I'm going to buy a new computer.
10. We haven't got a key.

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1. I'm enjoying my new job. Diane
2. I'm not hungry. Emma
3. I need it. Mike
4. I don't want to go. Hannah
5. You can have it. Susan
6. I'll send you a postcard. Martin
7. Where's Robert? Nicole
8. I want to watch TV. David
9. I'm going to the cinema. Mary

1. I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
2. Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said
3. I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said
4. Hannah was invited to the party, but she said
5. Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said
6. Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said
7. I was looking for Robert. Nicole said
8. 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said
9. 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said

50.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1. He said he was tired.
2. What did she tell you?
3. Anna told she didn't like Peter.
4. Jack told me that you were ill.
5. Please don't tell Dan what happened.
6. Did Lucy say she would be late?
7. The woman said she was a reporter.
8. The woman told us she was a reporter.
9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell them anything.
10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't say anything.
work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:  

**will**  
- Anna will be here soon.  → Units 27–28
- Shall I open the window?  → Unit 29

**shall**  
- Shall I open the window?  → Unit 29

**might**  
- I might phone you later.  → Units 30

**may**  
- May I sit here?  → Units 31

**can**  
- I can't meet you tomorrow.  → Units 32

**could**  
- Could you pass the salt, please?  → Units 34

**must**  
- It's late. I must go now.  → Units 34

**should**  
- You shouldn't work so hard.  → Units 34

**would**  
- Would you like some coffee?  → Units 34

We use the infinitive with do/does/did:

**do/does**  
- Do you work?  → Units 6–7  
- They don't work very hard.  
- Helen doesn't know many people.  
- How much does it cost?

**did**  
- What time did the train leave?  → Unit 12  
- We didn't sleep well.

**to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)**

(I'm) **going to**  
- I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.  → Unit 26  
- What are you going to do?

(I) **have to**  
- I have to go now.  → Unit 33  
- Everybody has to eat.

(I) **want to**  
- Do you want to go out?  → Unit 52  
- They don't want to come with us.

(I) **would like to**  
- I'd like to talk to you.  → Unit 34  
- Would you like to go out?

(I) **used to**  
- Dave used to work in a factory.  → Unit 36

**working/go/playing etc.**

**am/is/are + -ing**  
- Please be quiet. I'm working.  → Units 3–4, 8, 25  
- Tom isn't working today.

**was/were + -ing**  
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.  → Units 13–14  
- What were you doing when the phone rang?
51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul or ... to phone Paul.

1 I'll ______ phone Paul. 6 Do you have ____________?  
2 I'm going ______ to phone Paul. 7 You should ____________.  
3 Can you ____________ Paul? 8 I want ____________.  
4 Shall I ____________? 9 I might ____________.  
5 I'd like ____________. 10 You must ____________.  

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do/doing</th>
<th>get/getting</th>
<th>sleep/sleeping</th>
<th>watch/watching</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat/eating</td>
<td>go/going</td>
<td>stay/staying</td>
<td>wear/wearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly/flying</td>
<td>listen/listening</td>
<td>wait/waiting</td>
<td>work/working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Please be quiet. I'm _______ working.  
2 I feel tired today. I didn't _______ very well last night.  
3 What time do you usually ____________ up in the morning?  
4 'Where are you ____________?' 'To the bank.'  
5 Did you ____________ television last night?  
6 Look at that plane! It's ____________ very low.  
7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not ____________ to it.  
8 They didn't ____________ anything because they weren't hungry.  
9 My friends were ____________ for me when I arrived.  
10 'Does Susan always ____________ glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'  
11 'What are you ____________ tonight?' 'I'm ____________ at home.'

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

- the infinitive (work/go etc.) or  
- to ... (to work / to go etc.) or  
- -ing (working/going etc.)

1 Shall I ____________ the window? (open)  
2 It's late. I have ____________ now. (go)  
3 Amanda isn't ____________ this week. She's on holiday. (work)  
4 I'm tired. I don't want ____________ out. (go)  
5 It might ____________, so take an umbrella with you. (rain)  
6 What time do you have ____________ tomorrow morning? (leave)  
7 I'm sorry I can't ____________ you. (help)  
8 My brother is a student. He's ____________ physics. (study)  
9 Would you like ____________ on a trip round the world? (go)  
10 When you saw Maria, what was she ____________? (wear)  
11 When you go to London, where are you going ____________? (stay)  
12 I'm hungry. I must ____________ something to eat. (have)  
13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's ____________ a bath.' (have)  
14 I used ____________ a car, but I sold it last year. (have)  
15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't ____________ him. (hear)  
16 You don't look well. I don't think you should ____________ to work today. (go)  
17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't ____________ to him. (listen)  
18 I'm sorry I'm late. I had ____________ a phone call. (make)  
19 I want ____________ what happened. (know) You must ____________ me. (tell)  
20 May I ____________ your phone? (use)
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

- want
- plan
- decide
- try
- hope
- expect
- offer
- forget
- need
- promise
- refuse
- learn

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don’t need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her car.
- You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

- enjoy
- mind
- stop
- finish
- suggest

+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- I enjoy dancing. (not enjoy to dance)
- I don’t mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.

verbs + -ing or to ...

- like
- love
- start
- continue
- prefer
- hate
- begin

+ -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.

would like to ... etc.

- would like
- would love
- would prefer
- would hate

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Julia would like to meet you.
- I’d love to go to Australia. (I’d = I would)
- ‘Would you like to sit down?’ ‘No, I’d prefer to stand, thank you.’
- I like this city very much. I wouldn’t like to move.
- I’d hate to lose my address book.
Exercises

Unit 52

52.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy dancing. (dance)
2. What do you want to do tonight? (do)
3. Bye! I hope you again soon. (see)
4. I learnt when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Have you finished the kitchen? (clean)
6. Where's Anna? I need her something. (ask)
7. Do you enjoy other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Bill? He promised here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind . (wait)
11. What have you decided? (do)
12. Gary was very angry and refused to me. (speak)
13. I'm tired. I want to bed. (go)
14. I was very upset and started . (cry)
15. I'm trying . (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use these verbs:
go go help lose rain read see send wait watch

1. 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'No, but I'd love .'
2. Jane had a lot to do, so I offered her.
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect you.
4. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys .
5. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate .
6. Don't forget us a postcard when you're on holiday.
7. I'm not going out until it stops .
8. What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evenings, I like television.
10. 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer a few minutes.'

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Do you usually get up early?
   Yes, I like .

2. Do you ever go to museums?
   Yes, I enjoy .

3. Would you like to go to a museum now?
   No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer to a restaurant.

4. Do you often write letters?
   No, I don't like .

5. Have you ever been to New York?
   No, but I'd love one day.

6. Do you often travel by train?
   Yes, I enjoy .

7. Shall we walk home or take a taxi?
   I don't mind , but a taxi would be quicker.

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy .
2. I don't like .
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like .
4. When I'm on holiday, I like .
5. I don't mind , but .
6. I wouldn't like .

→ Additional exercise 32 (page 268)
I want you to ...  I told you to ...

I want you to ...

The woman wants to go.
The man doesn't want the woman to go. He wants her to stay.

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>somebody to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I want you to be happy. (not I want that you are happy)
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:
- Would you like me to lend you some money?

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>somebody + to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>Sue asked a friend to lend her some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>I told you to be careful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>What do you advise me to do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>I didn't expect them to be here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>We persuaded Gary to come with us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>I am teaching my brother to swim.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...

→ Jane told me to wait for her.
→ Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:
- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working. (not let me to use)

You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:
- Come on! Let's dance.
- 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

Let's ... → Unit 35  He told me that ... → Unit 50
53.1 Write sentences beginning I want you ... / I don’t want you ... / Do you want me ... ?

1 (you must come with me) I want you to come with me.
2 (listen carefully) I want you to listen carefully.
3 (please don’t be angry) I don’t want you to be angry.
4 (shall I wait for you?) Do you want me to wait for you?
5 (don’t phone me tonight) Don’t phone me tonight.
6 (you must meet Sarah) I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told me to.
3 Brian wasn’t well. I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked Paul to borrow her.
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told him to wait.
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let me.
7 Sue is going to phone later. I told her to.
8 Ann’s mother taught me to play the piano.

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.), sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive borrow get go go make repeat tell think wait

1 Please stay here. I don’t want you to go yet.
2 I didn’t hear what she said, so I asked her to repeat it.
3 ‘Shall we begin?’ ‘No, let’s wait a few minutes.’
4 Are they already here? I expected them much later.
5 Kevin’s parents didn’t want him to wait until much later.
6 I want to stay here. You can’t make me repeat that.
7 ‘Is that your bicycle?’ ‘No, it’s John’s. He let me repeat it.’
8 Rachel can’t come to the party. She told me to repeat you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me to repeat some coffee?
10 ‘Kate doesn’t like me.’ ‘What makes you repeat that?’
Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop? To get a newspaper.

She went to the shop to get a newspaper.

to ... (to get / to see etc.) tells us why a person does something:
- 'Why are you going out?' ‘To get some bread.’
- Catherine went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):
- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

to ... and for ...

to + verb (to get / to see etc.)
- I went to the shop to get a newspaper. (not for get)
- They're going to Brazil to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

for + noun (for a newspaper / for food etc.)
- I went to the shop for a newspaper.
- They're going to Brazil for a holiday.
- We need some money for food.

wait for ...:
- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something):
- Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to ...
- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?
Exercises

54.1 Write sentences beginning I went to ... Choose from the boxes.

the café  the post-office  buy some food  get some stamps
the chemist  the supermarket  get some medicine  meet a friend

1 I went to the post office to get some stamps.
2 I went ...
3 ...
4 ...

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air  to open this door  to read the newspaper  to see who it was
to watch the news  to wake him up

1 I turned on the television ...
2 Alice sat down in an armchair ...
3 Do I need a key ...
4 I went for a walk by the river ...
5 I knocked on the door of David's room ...
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ...

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use to ...

1 I went to the shop ...
2 I'm very busy. I haven't got time ...
3 I phoned Ana ...
4 I'm going out ...
5 I borrowed some money ...

54.4 Write to or for.

1 I went out ...
2 We went to a restaurant ...
3 Robert wants to go to university ...
4 I'm going to London ...
5 I'm going to London ...
6 Have you got time ...
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time ...
8 Everybody needs money ...
9 We didn't have any money ...
10 The office is very small. There's space only ...

11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting ...
   B: No, I'm waiting ...

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

John / phone   it / to arrive    you / to tell me    the film / begin

1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting ...
2 I sat down in the cinema and waited ...
3 We called an ambulance and waited ...
4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting …
### go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing

#### A

**go to ...** *(go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)*

- What time do you usually *go to work*?
- I'm **going to China** next week.
- Sophie didn't want to *go to the concert*.
- 'Where's Tom?'  'He's gone to bed.'
- I went to the **dentist yesterday**.

**go to sleep** = start to sleep:
- I was very tired and went *to sleep* quickly.

**go home** *(without to)*
- I'm *going home* now. *(not going to home)*

#### B

**go on**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go on</th>
<th>holiday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a trip</td>
<td>a trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a tour</td>
<td>a tour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an excursion</td>
<td>an excursion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cruise</td>
<td>a cruise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We're **going on holiday** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
- Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**.
  (= they are refusing to work)

#### C

**go for**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go (somewhere) for</th>
<th>a walk</th>
<th>a run</th>
<th>a swim</th>
<th>a drink</th>
<th>a meal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- 'Where's Emma?'  'She's **gone for a walk**.'
- Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- I met Chris in town, so we went for a coffee.
- Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.

#### D

**go + -ing**

We use *go + -ing* for many sports *(swimming / skiing etc.*) and also shopping.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I go</th>
<th>shopping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he is going</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we went</td>
<td>fishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have gone</td>
<td>sailing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she wants to go</td>
<td>skiing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>jogging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**.
  (or Let's **go for a swim**.)
- Richard has a small boat and he often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.
55.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.
1 I'm going ___ to ___ China next week.
2 Richard often goes ___ ___ sailing. (no preposition)
3 Sue went ___ ___ Mexico last year.
4 Would you like to go ___ ___ the cinema this evening?
5 Jack goes ___ ___ jogging every morning.
6 I'm going out ___ ___ a walk. Do you want to come?
7 I'm tired because I went ___ ___ bed very late last night.
8 Martin is going ___ ___ holiday ___ ___ Italy next week.
9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went ___ ___ a swim.
10 The taxi drivers went ___ ___ strike when I was in New York.
11 I need some stamps, so I'm going ___ ___ the post office.
12 It's late. I have to go ___ ___ home now.
13 Would you like to go ___ ___ a tour of the city?
14 Shall we go out ___ ___ dinner this evening?
15 My parents are going ___ ___ a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.

1 Richard has a boat. He often ___ ___ goes ___ ___ sailing ___ ___ .
2 Last Saturday Diane went ___ ___ every day.
3 Gary ___ ___ every day.
4 Nicole is going on holiday next month. She is ___ ___ every day.
5 Peter is going out later. He has to ___ ___ after work yesterday.
6 Sarah ___ ___ after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a-swim</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>Portugal</th>
<th>shopping</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>university</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a walk</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>riding</td>
<td>skiing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The water looks nice. Let's go ___ ___ for ___ ___ a swim ___ ___ .
2 After leaving school, Tina went ___ ___ where she studied psychology.
3 I'm going ___ ___ now. I have to buy a few things.
4 I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went ___ ___ early.
5 We live near the mountains. In winter we go ___ ___ most weekends.
6 Richard has got a horse. He goes ___ ___ a lot.
7 The weather is nice. Shall we go ___ ___ along the river?
8 A: Are you going ___ ___ soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going ___ ___ . We've never been there before.
get

get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/find:

- You don't have something — you get it — you have it
  - 'Did you get my postcard?' 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (= receive)
  - 'I like your sweater. Where did you get it?' (= buy)
  - 'Is it difficult to get a job at the moment?' (= find)
  - (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?' 'Sure. I'll get her.'

also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):
- 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I got the bus.'

get hungry / get cold / get tired etc. (get + adjective) = become:

- You're not hungry — you get hungry — you are hungry
  - If you don't eat, you get hungry.
  - Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
  - I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
  - It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got very wet.

also get married

get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

- Nicole and Frank are getting married soon.
- I got up and got dressed quickly.
- We didn't have a map, so we got lost.

get to a place = arrive:

- I usually get to work before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12:45.

got here/there (without to):

- How did you get here? By bus?

got home (without to):

- What time did you get home last night?

get in/out/on/off

- Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car and ...)
- A car stopped and a man got out. (but A man got out of the car.)
- We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.
56.1 Complete these sentences. Use get/gets and choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a doctor</th>
<th>a lot of rain</th>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>my postcard</th>
<th>the job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a good salary</td>
<td>a new computer</td>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td>some milk</td>
<td>your jacket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Did you get my postcard? I sent it a week ago.
2. Where did you get the job? It's very nice.
3. Quick! This man is ill. We must get to hospital.
4. I don't want to walk home. Let's get a taxi.
5. Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he gets the job.
6. When you go out, can you get home safely?
7. 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get there.'
8. Margaret has got a well-paid job. She gets a good salary.
9. The weather is horrible here in winter. We get a lot of rain.
10. I'm going to get a new computer. The one I have is too slow.

56.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + these words:

cold dark late married ready

1. Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
2. Turn on the light. It's getting dark.
3. 'I'm getting married next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
4. 'Where's Karen?' 'She's getting ready to go out.'
5. It's getting late. It's time to go home.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/gets/got + these words:

angry better hungry lost married old wet

1. If you don't eat, you get hungry.
2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll get wet.
3. My brother got lost last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4. Martin is always very calm. He never gets angry.
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we got lost.
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we all get older.
7. Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it got better during the day.

56.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ...

1. home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.

2. London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
I left London at 10.15 and got to Bristol at 11.45.

3. the party / 11.15 → home / midnight

4. Write a sentence about yourself.
I left school at 15.30 and got to university at 16.30.

56.5 Write got in / got out of / got on / got off.

1. Kate got in the car and drove away.
2. I got on the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Isabel got off the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I got on the wrong train.
do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

- What are you doing this evening? (not What are you making?)
- 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll do it.'
- Rachel's job is very boring. She does the same thing every day.
- I did a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?
- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'

Make = produce/create. For example:

She's making coffee. He has made a cake. They make umbrellas. It was made in China.

Compare do and make:

- I did a lot yesterday. I cleaned my room, I wrote some letters and I made a cake.
  B: I make clothes. I make dresses and jackets. I also make toys for my children.

Expressions with do

- do an exam / a test
- a course
- homework
- housework
- somebody a favour
- an exercise
- I'm doing my driving test next week.
- John has just done a training course.
- Our children have to do a lot of homework.
- I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- Sue, could you do me a favour?
- I go for a run and do exercises every morning.

also do the shopping / do the washing / do the washing-up / do the ironing / do the cooking etc. :
- I did the washing, but I didn't do the shopping.

Expressions with make

- make a mistake
- an appointment
- a phone call
- a list
- a noise
- a bed
- I'm sorry, I made a mistake.
- I need to make an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.
- Have you made a shopping list?
- It's late. Don't make a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.

We say make a film but take a photograph:

- When was this film made? but When was this photograph taken?

do/does/did (negatives and questions) → Units 43–44  make somebody do something → Unit 53
57.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

1. ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll __________ it.’
2. What did you ______________ at the weekend? Did you go away?
3. Do you know how to ______________ bread?
4. Paper is ______________ from wood.
5. Richard didn’t help me. He sat in an armchair and __________ nothing.
6. ‘What do you ____________?’ ‘I’m a doctor.’
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you ______________ it?
8. ‘What do they ______________ in that factory?’ ‘Shoes.’
9. I’m ______________ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you angry with me? I didn’t ______________ anything wrong.
11. ‘What are you ______________ tomorrow afternoon?’ ‘I’m working.’

57.2 What are these people doing?

1. He’s making a cake.
2. They ________________
3. He ________________
4. ________________
5. ________________
6. ________________
7. ________________
8. ________________
9. ________________
10. ________________

57.3 Write make or do in the correct form.

1. I hate ________________ housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always ________________ the same mistake?
3. ‘Can you ________________ me a favour?’ ‘It depends what it is.’
4. ‘Have you ________________ your homework?’ ‘Not yet.’
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven’t ________________ an appointment.
6. I’m ________________ a course in photography at the moment. It’s very good.
7. The last time I ________________ an exam was ten years ago.
8. How many phone calls did you ________________ yesterday?
9. When you’ve finished Exercise 1, you can ________________ Exercise 2.
10. There’s something wrong with the car. The engine is ________________ a strange noise.
11. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I’ve ever ________________
12. Let’s ________________ a list of all the things we have to ________________ today.
have

have and have got

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:
- I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.)
I have a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.
- I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
- Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:
- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- Did you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You can’t use 'have got'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>breakfast / lunch / dinner</th>
<th>a bath / a shower</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc.</td>
<td>a rest / a holiday / a party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc.</td>
<td>a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>something to eat/drink</td>
<td>a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a dream / an accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a look (at something)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Where's Liz?' 'She's having lunch.'
- I don't usually have breakfast.
- I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>a bath / a shower</th>
<th>I had a shower this morning.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a rest / a holiday / a party</td>
<td>We're having a party next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.</td>
<td>You must come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)</td>
<td>Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a dream / an accident</td>
<td>Did you have a good time in Tokyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a baby</td>
<td>Sandra has just had a baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a look (at something)</td>
<td>Can I have a look at your newspaper?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

Have got or have
- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good.

Have (not have got)
- I have a shower every morning. 
  (not I've got a shower every morning)
- A: Where's Paul?
  B: He's having a shower.
  (= he's washing now)
58.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.
1 I didn’t have time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2 Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) a car? ‘No, she can’t drive.’ (Lisa / have?)
3 He can’t open the door. He’s lost a key. (he / not / have)
4 He’s had a cold last week. He’s better now. (Gary / have)
5 What’s wrong? He’s got a headache? (you / have?)
6 We wanted to go by taxi, but we didn’t have enough money. (we / have?)
7 Liz is very busy. She’s got much free time. (she / not / have)
8 Did you have any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a bath</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
<th>a cup of tea</th>
<th>dinner</th>
<th>a good time</th>
<th>a rest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 They’re having breakfast. 4 They
2 She has a cup of tea. 5
3 He is having dinner. 6

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.
1 Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
   Have a nice holiday!
2 You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
   Did you have a good flight?
3 Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
4 It’s Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
6 Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
7 Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

- an accident  - a glass of water  - a look  - a walk  - a party  - something to eat

1 We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2 ‘Shall we have a drink?’ ‘No, I’m not hungry.’
3 I was thirsty, so I had a glass of water.
4 I like to get up early and take a walk before breakfast.
5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never had an accident.
6 There’s something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you have a look at it?
人民

主体

我

我们

你

他

她

他们

对象

我

我们

你

他

她

他们

我知道汤姆。

汤姆知道我。

汤姆知道我们。

汤姆知道你。

汤姆知道他。

汤姆知道她。

汤姆知道他们。

你知道汤姆。

你认识汤姆。

他知道汤姆。

她认识汤姆。

他们认识汤姆。

事情

它是好的。我喜欢。

它们是好的。我喜欢它们。

我不想要这本书。你可以拿走它。

我不想要这些书。你可以拿走它们。

戴安从不喝牛奶。她不喜欢它。

我从不去派对。我不喜欢它们。

我们使用 me/her/them 等 (对象) 在一个介词 (for/to/with 等) 后面：

- 这封信不是给我。它是给你。
- 那位女士是谁？你正在看她？
- 我们要去看电影。你想和我们一起吗？
- 劳拉和凯文去看电影。你想和他们一起去吗？
- ‘报纸在哪里？’ ‘你正坐在上面。’

give it/them to ...：

- 我想要那本书。请把它给我。
- 罗伯特需要这些书。你能把它们给他吗？
59.1 Complete the sentences with **him/her/them**.

1. I don't know **those** girls. Do you know **them**?
2. I don't know **that** man. Do you know **him**?
3. I don't know those people. Do you know **them**?
4. I don't know David's wife. Do you know **her**?
5. I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know **them**?
6. I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know **them**?
7. I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know **her**?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her** etc.

1. I want to see **her**, but **she** doesn't want to see **me**.
2. **They** want to see **me**, but **I** don't want to see **them**.
3. **She** wants to see **him**, but **he** doesn't want to see **her**.
4. **We** want to see **them**, but **they** don't want to see **us**.
5. **He** wants to see **us**, but **we** don't want to see **him**.
6. **They** want to see **her**, but **she** doesn't want to see **them**.
7. **I** want to see **them**, but **they** don't want to see **me**.
8. **You** want to see **her**, but **she** doesn't want to see **you**.

59.3 Write sentences beginning **I like ..... I don't like ..... or Do you like ..... ?**

1. I don't eat tomatoes. **I don't like them**.
2. George is a very nice man. I like **him**.
3. This jacket isn't very nice. I don't like **them**.
4. This is my new car. Do **you** like it?
5. Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I don't like **her**.
6. These are my new shoes. Do **you** like **them**?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/he/him etc**

1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at **her**?
2. Do you know that man? 'Yes, I work with **him**.'
3. Where are the tickets? I can't find **them**.
4. I can't find my keys. Are **you** looking for **them**?
5. We're going out. You can come with **us**.
6. I've got a new computer. Do you want to see **it**?
7. Maria likes music. **She** plays the piano.
8. I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of **them**.
9. I'm talking to you. Please listen to **me**.
10. Where is Anna? I want to talk to **her**.
11. You can have these CDs. I don't want **them**.
12. My brother has a new job, but **he** doesn't like **it** very much.

59.5 Complete the sentences.

1. I need that book. Can you give it to **me**?
2. He wants the key. Can you give **him** the key?
3. She wants the keys. Can you give **her** the keys?
4. I want that letter. Can you give **me** the letter?
5. They want the money. Can you give **them** the money?
6. We want the photographs. Can you give **us** the photographs?
my/his/their etc.

We use **my/your/his etc.** + **noun**:
- my hands
- his new car
- her parents
- our clothes
- your best friend
- their room

**his/her/their**

- **her** car
  (= Donna's car)
- **her** husband
  (= Donna's husband)
- **her** children
  (= Donna's children)
- **his** bicycle
- **his** sister
- **his** parents
- **their** son
- **their** daughter
- **their** children

**its and it's**

- its
  Oxford is famous for **its** university.
- it's (= it is)
  I like Oxford. **It's** a nice place. (= **It is** a nice place.)
60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1 I'm going to wash __________ hands. 4 He's going to wash __________.
2 She's going to wash ___________ hands. 5 They're going to wash ___________?
3 We're going to wash ___________. 6 Are you going to wash ___________?

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1 He __________ lives with his parents. 5 I ___________ parents.
2 They live with ___________ parents. 6 John ____________
3 We ___________ parents. 7 Do you live ___________?
4 Jane lives ___________. 8 Most children ____________

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.
1 I saw Sarah with ___________ husband, Philip.
2 I saw Laura and Steve with ___________ children.
3 I saw Steve with ___________ wife, Laura.
4 I saw Gary with ___________ brother, Tim.
5 I saw Laura with ___________ brother, Tim.
6 I saw Sarah and Philip with ___________ son, Tim.
7 I saw Laura with ___________ parents.
8 I saw Emma and Robert with ___________ parents.

60.4 Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.
1 Do you like ___________ job?
2 I know Mr. Watson, but I don't know ___________ wife.
3 Alice and Tom live in London. ___________ son lives in Australia.
4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all ___________ friends.
5 Anna is going out with ___________ friends this evening.
6 I like tennis. It's ___________ favourite sport.
7 'Is that ___________ car?' 'No, I haven't got a car.'
8 I want to phone Maria. Do you know ___________ phone number?
9 Do you think most people are happy in ___________ jobs?
10 I'm going to wash ___________ hair before I go out.
11 This is a beautiful tree. ___________ leaves are a beautiful colour.
12 John has a brother and a sister. ___________ brother is 23, and ___________ sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their etc. with these words:
cloak  homework  house  husband  job  key  name
1 Jim doesn't enjoy ___________ job. It's not very interesting.
2 I can't get in. I haven't got ___________.
3 Sally is married. ___________ works in a bank.
4 Please take off ___________ and sit down.
5 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing ___________.'
6 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know ___________.'
7 We live in Barton Street. ___________ is at the end on the left.
Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

We use my/your etc. + noun (my hands / your book etc.):
- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Helen gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use mine/yours etc. without a noun:
- Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use his with or without a noun:
- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'

A friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.
- I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of his. (not a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of yours? (not friends of you)

Whose ...?
- Whose book is this? (= Is it your book?

You can use whose with or without a noun:
- Whose money is this? It's mine.
- Whose is this?
- Whose shoes are these? They're John's.
61.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours etc.

1. It's your money. It's ______ yours ________.
2. It's my bag. It's ________.
3. It's our car. It's ________.
4. They're her shoes. They're ________.
5. It's their house. It's ________.
6. They're your books. They're ________.
7. They're my glasses. They're ________.
8. It's his coat. It's ________.

61.2 Choose the right word.

1. It's their/their problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They've got two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.

1. I went to the cinema with a ______ friend(s) of mine ______.
2. They went on holiday with some ______ friends of theirs ______.
3. She's going out with a friend ______.
4. We had dinner with some ______.
5. I played tennis with a ______.
6. Tom is going to meet a ______.
7. Do you know those people? Are they ______?

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

1. Whose car ______ is this? It's theirs ______.
2. ______ is this? It's ______.
3. ______ these? They ______.
4. ______? ______ ______?
5. ______? ______.
6. ______? ______.
### l/me/my/mine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I etc.</th>
<th>me etc.</th>
<th>my etc.</th>
<th>mine etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(→ Unit 59)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 59)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 60)</td>
<td>(→ Unit 61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows me.</td>
<td>It's my car.</td>
<td>It's mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows us.</td>
<td>It's our car.</td>
<td>It's ours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows you.</td>
<td>It's your car.</td>
<td>It's yours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows him.</td>
<td>It's his car.</td>
<td>It's his.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows her.</td>
<td>It's her car.</td>
<td>It's hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows them.</td>
<td>It's their car.</td>
<td>It's theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples:
- ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.’
- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?
  - B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That’s my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- ‘Is this your umbrella?’ ‘No, it’s yours.’
- He didn’t have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I’m going out with a friend of mine this evening. (not a friend of me)

myself/yoursself etc. → Unit 63  Give me that book / Give it to me → Unit 96
Exercises

Unit 62

62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1. Do you know that man?
   Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name.

2. Do you know that woman?
   Yes, I know __________, but I can't remember __________.

3. Do you know those people?
   Yes, I _________________, but I can't remember _________________ names.

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her ___________ to stay with us at our house. ___________.
2. He invited us to stay with _______________ at his house.
3. They invited me to stay with _______________ at his house.
4. I invited them to stay _______________ at their house.
5. She invited us to stay _______________ at our house.
6. Did you invite him _______________ at his house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him ______________ address, and he gave me his.
2. I gave her ______________ address, and she gave me ______________ address.
3. He gave me ______________ address, and I gave ______________ address.
4. We gave them ______________ address, and they gave ______________ address.
5. She gave him ______________ address, and he gave ______________ address.
6. You gave us ______________ address, and we gave ______________ address.
7. They gave you ______________ address, and you gave ______________ address.

62.4 Write him/her/yours etc.

1. Where's Amanda? Have you seen ________________?
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put ________________?
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to ________________?
4. We don't see ________________ neighbours much. They're not at home very often.
5. I can't find my pen. Can I use ________________? 'Yes, of course.'
6. We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with ________________?
7. Did your sister pass ________________ exams?
8. Some people talk about ________________ jobs all the time.
9. Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of ________________.
myself/yourself/themselves etc.

He's looking at himself.

They're enjoying themselves.

| i → me → myself | I looked at myself in the mirror. |
| he → him → himself | He cut himself with a knife. |
| she → her → herself | She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt herself. |
| you → you → yourself | Please help yourself. (one person) |
| we → us → ourselves | Please help yourselves. (two or more people) |
| they → them → themselves | We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves. |
| | They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves. |

Compare:

me/him/them etc.

She is looking at him.

different people

- You never talk to me.
- I didn't pay for them.
- I'm sorry. Did I hurt you?

myself/himself/themselves etc.

He is looking at himself.

the same person

- Sometimes I talk to myself.
- They paid for themselves.
- Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:

- I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
- 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was by herself'

each other

- Kate and Helen are good friends. They know each other well.
  (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- Paul and I live near each other. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:

- Tim and Sue looked at each other.
  (= he looked at her, she looked at him)
- Tim and Sue looked at themselves.
  (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)
Exercises

Unit 63

63.1 Complete the sentences with myself/yourself etc.

1. He looked at _______ in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with _______.
3. Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed _______.
4. My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed _______.
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt _______.
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about _______.
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about _______ (one person)
8. Goodbye! Have a good trip and look after _______ (two people)

63.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself etc.

1. I went on holiday alone. _______ went on holiday by myself
2. When I saw him, he was alone. _______ when I saw him, he _______.
3. Don't go out alone. _______.
4. I went to the cinema alone. _______.
5. My sister lives alone. _______.
6. Many people live alone. _______.

63.3 Write sentences with each other.

1. I like her. _______.
   2. I like him. _______.
   3. They like each other. _______.

4. I can't see her. _______.
   2. I can't see him. _______.
   3. They can't _______.

4. I'm sitting next to him. _______.
   6. I gave her a present. _______.

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use: each other or ourselves/yourselves/ourselves or us/you/them

1. Paul and I live near _______.
2. Who are those people? Do you know _______.
3. You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help _______.
4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help _______.
5. We didn't go to Emily's party. She didn't invite _______.
6. When we go on holiday, we always enjoy _______.
7. Mary and Jane were at school together, but they never see _______.
8. Diane and I are very good friends. We've known _______.
9. 'Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to _______.
10. Many people talk to _______. when they're alone.
-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)

We normally use -'s for people:
- I stayed at my sister's house. (not the house of my sister)
- Have you met Mr Black's wife? (not the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to James's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:
- Sophie's hair is longer than Kate's. (= Kate's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at Paul's.' (= Paul's house)

friend's and friends'

my friend's house = one friend
(= his house or her house)

We write 's after
friend/student/mother etc. (singular):
- my mother's car (one mother)
- my father's car (one father)

my friends' house = two or more friends
(= their house)

We write ' after
friends/students/parents etc. (plural):
- my parents' car (two parents)

We use of ... for things, places etc.:
- Look at the roof of that building. (not that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning of the film. (not the film's beginning)
- What's the name of this village?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.
Exercises

64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

1. Brian is Helen's husband.
2. Sarah is Daniel's mother.
3. Helen is __________________________ wife.
4. James is Sarah's __________________________.
5. James is __________________________ uncle.
6. Sarah is __________________________ wife.
7. Helen is Daniel's __________________________.
8. Sarah is James's __________________________.
9. Paul is __________________________ husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's __________________________.
11. Daniel is __________________________ nephew.

Helen and Brian are married.
They have a son, James, and a daughter, Sarah.
Sarah is married to Paul.
Sarah and Paul have a son, Daniel.

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

1. Whose is this? __________
   Jane's

2. Whose is this? __________
   Andy's

3. And this? __________
   Alice's

4. And these? __________
   Andy's

5. And this? __________
   Diane's

6. And these? __________
   Dave's

64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. __________ my sister's house
   OK
2. What is the name of this village? __________
3. Do you like the colour of this coat? __________
4. Do you know the phone number of Simon? __________
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. __________
6. Write your name at the top of the page. __________
7. For me, the morning is the best part of the day. __________
8. The favourite colour of Paula is blue. __________
9. When is the birthday of your mother? __________
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. __________
11. The walls of this house are very thin. __________
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. __________
13. Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? __________
14. The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment. __________
He's got a camera. She's waiting for a taxi. It's a beautiful day.

- a ... = one thing or person:
  - Rachel works in a bank.  
  - Can I ask a question?  
  - I haven't got a computer.  
  - There's a woman at the bus stop.

- an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:
  - Do you want an apple or a banana?  
  - I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.  
  - There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

- also an hour (h is not pronounced: an’hour)  
- but a university (pronounced university)  
- a European country (pronounced European)

- another (= an + other) is one word:
  - Can I have another cup of coffee?

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:
  - The sun is a star.  
  - Football is a game.  
  - Dallas is a city in Texas.  
  - A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.  
  - Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:
  - A: What's your job?  
    B: I'm a dentist. (not I'm dentist)  
  - 'What does Mark do?'  
    'He's an engineer.'  
  - Would you like to be a teacher?  
  - Beethoven was a composer.  
  - Picasso was a famous painter.  
  - Are you a student?
Exercises

65.1 Write a or an.
1 an old book
2 a window
3 a horse
4 an airport
5 a new airport
6 an organisation
7 a university
8 an hour
9 an economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bird</th>
<th>fruit</th>
<th>mountain</th>
<th>river</th>
<th>musical instrument</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>game</td>
<td>planet</td>
<td>tool</td>
<td>vegetable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A duck is a bird.
2 A carrot is a vegetable.
3 Tennis is a game.
4 A hammer is a tool.
5 Everest is a mountain.
6 Saturn is a planet.
7 A banana is a fruit.
8 The Amazon is a river.
9 A rose is a flower.
10 A trumpet is a musical instrument.

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect, dentist, shop assistant, photographer,
electrician, nurse, taxi driver

1 She's a dentist.
2 He's an electrician.
3 She's a nurse.
4 She's a shop assistant.
5 He's a dentist.
6 He's a dentist.
7 She's a nurse.
8 And you? I'm a nurse.

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

I want to ask you a question.

1 I want to ask you a question.
2 I want to ask you a question.
3 I want to ask you a question.
4 I want to ask you a question.
5 I want to ask you a question.
6 I want to ask you a question.
7 I want to ask you a question.
8 I want to ask you a question.

old house, artist
party, question
bookshop, foreign language
hat, bicycle
The plural of a noun is usually -s:

- singular (= one) → plural (= two or more)
  - a flower → some flowers
  - a train → two trains
  - one week → a few weeks
  - a nice place → some nice places
  - this student → these students

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-s / -sh / -ch / -x</td>
<td>-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish</td>
<td>dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church</td>
<td>churches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>-ies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictionary</td>
<td>dictionaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-f / -fe</td>
<td>-ves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shelf</td>
<td>shelves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
<td>wives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These things are plural in English:

- scissors
- glasses
- trousers
- jeans
- shorts
- tights
- pyjamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:

- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (not a new jeans)

Some plurals do not end in -s:

- this man → these men
- a woman → some women
- a child → many children

- one foot → two feet
- a tooth → all my teeth
- a mouse → some mice

Also a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.:

- She's a nice person.
- They are nice people. (not nice persons)

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.:

- A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural:

- The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (not The police wants)

by → Units 21, 63, 109  at/on → Units 103, 106-107  preposition + -ing → Unit 112
Exercises

66.1 Write the plural.

1. flower _________________________ flowers
2. boat ___________________________ address
3. woman __________________________ knife
4. city ______________________________ sandwich
5. umbrella __________________________ 9. family
6. foot _______________________________ holiday
7. sandwhich _________________________ potato

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. There are a lot of ________________________ in the field.
2. Gary is cleaning his ____________________________
3. There are three ____________________________ at the bus stop.
4. Lucy has got two ________________________________
5. There are a lot of ____________________________ in the river.
6. The ____________________________ are falling from the tree.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1. I'm going to buy some flowers.
2. I need a new jeans.
3. It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
4. There was a woman in the car with two mens.
5. Sheep eat grass.
6. David is married and has three childs.
7. Most of my friend are student.
8. He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
9. We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish.
10. Do you know many persons in this town?
11. I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
12. The town centre is usually full of tourist.
13. I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.
14. This scissor isn't very sharp.

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It's a nice place. Many people go____________ there on holiday.
2. Some people __________________ always late.
3. The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most people ______________ like it.
4. A lot of people __________________ television every day.
5. Three people __________________ injured in the accident.
6. How many people ______________ in that house?
7. __________________ the police know the cause of the explosion?
8. The police __________________ looking for the stolen car.
9. I need my glasses, but I can't find __________________.
10. I'm going to buy __________________ new jeans today.

goes or go
is or are
don't or doesn't
watch or watches
was or were
live or lives
Do or Does
is or are
it or them
a or some?
A noun can be countable or uncountable.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) bottle (a) house (a) key (an) idea (an) accident

You can use one/two/three (etc.) + countable nouns (you can count them):

- one bottle
- two bottles
- three men
- four houses

Countable nouns can be singular (= one) or plural (= two or more):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>a car</th>
<th>the car</th>
<th>my car</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>cars</td>
<td>two cars</td>
<td>the cars</td>
<td>some cars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- There aren't many cars in the car park.

You can't use the singular (car/bottle/key etc.) alone. You need a/an:
- We can't get into the house without a key. (not without key)

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic money music tennis

You can't say one/two/three (etc.) + these things: one water two music

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

- money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I've got some money.
- There isn't much money in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

You can't use a/an + uncountable nouns: × money × music × water

But you can say a piece of ... / a bottle of ... etc. + uncountable noun:

- a bottle of water
- a piece of cheese
- a bowl of rice
- a carton of milk
- a bottle of perfume
- a cup of coffee
- a bar of chocolate
- a piece of music
- a game of tennis
Exercises

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bucket</th>
<th>envelope</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>sand</th>
<th>toothbrush</th>
<th>wallet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>egg</td>
<td>jug</td>
<td>salt</td>
<td>spoon</td>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It's a salt.
2. It's a spoon.
3. It's a jug.
4. It's a toothbrush.
5. It's a envelope.
6. It's a money.
7. It's a sand.
8. It's a toothpaste.
9. It's a wallet.
10. It's a egg.
11. It's a jug.
12. It's a salt.
13. It's a spoon.
15. It's a envelope.
16. It's a money.
17. It's a sand.
18. It's a toothpaste.
19. It's a wallet.

67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

1. I haven't got a watch.
2. Do you like cheese? OK.
3. I never wear a hat.
4. Are you looking for a job?
5. Kate doesn't eat meat.
6. Kate eats an apple every day.
7. I'm going to party tonight.
8. Music is a wonderful thing.
9. Jamaica is an island.
10. I don't need a key.
11. Everybody needs food.
12. I've got good idea.
13. Can you drive a car?
14. Do you want a cup of coffee?
15. I don't like coffee without milk.
16. Don't go out without an umbrella.

67.3 What are these things? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bar</th>
<th>cup</th>
<th>loaf</th>
<th>bowl</th>
<th>glass</th>
<th>piece</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>tca</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honey</td>
<td>soup</td>
<td>wood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. a carton of milk
2. a piece of bread
3. a glass of milk
4. a cup of tea
5. a piece of chocolate
6. a piece of paper
7. a jar of honey
8. a carton of soup
9. a jar of wood
a cake / some cake / some cakes
(countable/uncountable 2)

A

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):  
- I need a new car.  
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):  
- I need some new shoes.  
- Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):  
- I need some water.  
- Would you like some cheese? (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a and some:
- Nicole bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.  
- I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

a cake / some cakes
  
a chicken / some chickens
  
a piece of cake / some cake or a piece of cake

Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:
- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.  
- but I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

B

Be careful with:

advice / bread / furniture / hair / information / news / weather / work

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say a/an ... (a bread, an advice), and they can't be plural (advices, furniture etc.).

- Can I talk to you? I need some advice. (not an advice)  
- I'm going to buy some bread. (not a bread)  
- They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (not furnitures)  
- Silvia has got very long hair. (not hairs)  
- I'd like some information about hotels in London. (not informations)  
- Listen! I've just had some good news. (not a good news)  
- It's nice weather today. (not a nice weather)  
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not a hard work)

We say a job (but not a work):
- I've got a new job. (not a new work)
68.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (I bought ...).

1. I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.
2. I bought ... (picture 1).
3. I bought ... (picture 2).
4. I bought ... (picture 3).

68.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ...? or Would you like some ...?

1. Would you like some cheese?
2. Would you like ... (picture 1)?
3. Would you like ... (picture 2)?
4. Would you like ... (picture 3)?
5. Would you like ... (picture 4)?
6. Would you like ... (picture 5)?
7. Would you like ... (picture 6)?

68.3 Write a/an or some.

1. I read a book and listened to some music.
2. I need some money. I want to buy some food.
3. We met some interesting people at the party.
4. I'm going to open a window to get fresh air.
5. Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only an apple and some bread.
6. We live in a big house. There's a nice garden with some beautiful trees.
7. I'm going to make a table. First I need some wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you some advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need some paper and a pen.

68.4 Which is right?

1. I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)
2. Martin has got brown eye/eyes.
3. Paula has got short black hair/hairs.
4. The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
5. We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6. We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7. It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.
8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.
There are three windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I've got a car.
  (there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask a question? (there are many questions — can I ask one?)
- Is there a hotel near here? (there are many hotels — is there one near here?)
- Paris is an interesting city. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is a student.
  (there are many students and Lisa is one)

Compare a and the:

- I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap, but the shirt was expensive,
  (= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

We say the ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

- the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room)
- the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house)
- the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)

- 'Where's Tom? 'In the kitchen.'
  (= the kitchen of this house or flat)
- Turn off the light and close the door.
  (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from the centre?
  (= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to the manager, please.
  (= the manager of this shop etc.)
Exercises

69.1 Write a/an or the.

1. We enjoyed our trip. __________ hotel was very nice.
2. ‘Can I ask __________ question?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to know?’
4. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s in __________ garden.’
5. Eve is __________ interesting person. You should meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to __________ city centre?
   B: Yes, go straight on and then take __________ next turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out for __________ meal this evening?
   B: Yes, that’s __________ good idea.
8. It’s __________ nice morning. Let’s go for __________ walk.
9. Amanda is __________ student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be __________ journalist.
   She lives with two friends in __________ apartment near __________ college where she is studying.
   __________ apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have got two children, __________ boy and __________ girl. __________ boy is seven
    years old, and __________ girl is three. Peter works in __________ factory. Mary hasn’t got __________ job
    at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

airport  cup  dictionary  door  floor  picture

1. Can you open __________ door, please?
2. How far is it to __________ airport?
3. Can I have __________ coffee, please?
4. That’s __________ nice.
5. Can you pass me __________ dictionary, please?
6. Why are you sitting on __________ chair?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Don’t forget to turn __________ light off when you go out.
2. Enjoy your trip, and don’t forget to send me postcard.
3. What is name of this village?
4. Canada is very __________ big country.
5. What is largest __________ city in __________ Canada?
6. I like __________ room, but I don’t like colour of __________ carpet.
7. ‘Are you OK?’ ‘No, I’ve got __________ headache.’
8. We live __________ old house near __________ station.
9. What is name of __________ director of __________ film we saw last night?
We use the when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is the name of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is the best player in your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)
- My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget the:

- Do you live near the city centre? (not near city centre)
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? (not where is nearest ...)

the same ...

- We live in the same street. (not in same street)
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're the same.' (not they're same)

We say:

- the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country
  - The sky is blue and the sun is shining.
  - Do you live in a town or in the country?

- the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.)
  - My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.
  - What do you think of the police? Do they do a good job?

- the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - My house is at the end of the street.
  - The table is in the middle of the room.
  - Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?

- (play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments)
  - Paula is learning to play the piano.

- the radio
  - I listen to the radio a lot.

- the Internet
  - Do you use the Internet much?

We do not use the with:

- television / TV
  - I watch TV a lot.
  - What's on television tonight?
- but Can you turn off the television? (= the TV set)

- breakfast / lunch / dinner
  - What did you have for breakfast? (not the breakfast)
  - Dinner is ready!

- next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.
  - I'm not working next week. (not the next week)
  - Did you have a holiday last summer? (not the last summer)
Exercises

70.1 Put in the where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1. What is name of this street? ____________________________________________________________________________
2. What's on television tonight? ____________________________________________________________________________
3. Is our apartment on second floor? _________________________________________________________________________
4. Would you like to go to moon? __________________________________________________________________________
5. Which is best hotel in this town? __________________________________________________________________________
6. What time is lunch? ______________________________________________________________________________________
7. How far is it to city centre? ______________________________________________________________________________
8. We're going away at end of May. __________________________________________________________________________
9. What are you doing next weekend? _________________________________________________________________________
10. I didn't like her first time I met her. _______________________________________________________________________
11. I'm going out after dinner. ________________________________________________________________________________
12. Internet is a good way of getting information. __________________________________________________________________
13. My sister got married last month. _________________________________________________________________________
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right. _____________________________________________________________________
15. We live in country about ten miles from nearest town. __________________________________________________________________

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use the same + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>age</th>
<th>colour</th>
<th>problem</th>
<th>street</th>
<th>time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street ____________________________________
2. I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at _______________________________________________________
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are ________________________________________________________________
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are _____________________________________________
5. I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got _____________________________________________________

70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.

1. The sun __________________________________________ is shining. 4. He's watching _________________________________
2. She's playing _________________________________________. 5. They're swimming in ________________________________
3. They're having _________________________________________. 6. Tim's name is at ________________________________ of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital dinner police lunch middle name sky television

1. We had ________________________ at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember ____________________________
3. __________________________________________ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. Sometimes there are some good films on ____________________________ late at night.
5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called ______________________________
6. Tokyo is ______________________________________ of Japan.
7. ‘What did you have for ___________________________?’ ‘A salad.’
8. I woke up in ________________________________ of the night.
go to work  go home  go to the cinema

She's at work.  They're going to school.  He's in bed.

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work
- By! I'm going to work now. (not to the work)
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, leave school etc.
- What did you learn at school today? (not at the school)
- Some children don't like school.

(go) to university/college, (be) at university/college
- Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
- What did you study at college?

(go) to hospital, (be) in hospital
- Jack had an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) to prison, (be) in prison
- Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church
- David usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed
- I'm tired. I'm going to bed. (not to the bed)
- 'Where's Jane?' 'She's in bed.'

(go) home, (be) at home etc.
- I'm tired. I'm going home. (not to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you staying at home?

We say:

(go to) the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office / the station / the airport / the city centre
- I never go to the theatre, but I go to the cinema a lot.
- 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, to the post office.'
- The number 5 bus goes to the airport; the number 8 goes to the city centre.

(go to) the doctor, the dentist
- You're not well. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
Exercises

71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 He's in ______.  3 She's in ______.  5 They're at ______.
2 They're at ______.  4 She's at ______.  6 He's in ______.

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

- bank  bed  church  home  post office  school  station

1 I need to change some money. I have to go to ___ the bank ___
2 David usually goes to ___ church ___ on Sundays.
3 In Britain, children go to ___ from the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at ___ waiting for the train.
5 I phoned you last night, but you weren't at ___
6 I'm going to ___ now. Goodnight!
7 I'm going to ___ to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 If you want to catch a plane, you ___ to the airport ___.
2 If you want to see a film, you go to ___.
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you ___.
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you ___.
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you ___.
6 If you want to study after you leave school, you ___.
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you ___.

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went ___ last night.
2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.
3 Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5 Why is Angela always late for work?
6 'Where are your children?' 'They're at school.'
7 We have no money in bank.
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9 What time do you usually get home from work?
10 Do you live far from city centre?
11 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.'
12 Jim is ill. He's in hospital.
13 Kate takes her children to school every day.
14 Would you like to go to university?
15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?
I like music  I hate exams

Do not use the for general ideas:

☐ I like music, especially classical music.
   (not the music ... the classical music)

☐ We don't eat meat very often. (not the meat)

☐ Life is not possible without water.
   (not the life ... the water)

☐ I hate exams. (not the exams)

☐ Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?

☐ I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not use the for games and sports:

☐ My favourite sports are football and skiing. (not the football ... the skiing)

Do not use the for languages or school subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):

☐ Do you think English is difficult? (not the English)

☐ Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

☐ Flowers are beautiful.
   (= flowers in general)

☐ I love this garden.
   The flowers are beautiful.
   (= the flowers in this garden)

☐ I don't like cold weather.
   (= cold weather in general)

☐ The weather isn't very good today.
   (= the weather today)

☐ We don't eat fish very often. (= fish in general)

☐ We had a great meal last night. The fish was excellent.
   (= the fish we ate last night)

☐ Are you interested in history?
   (= history in general)

☐ Do you know much about the history of your country?
Exercises

72.1 What do you think about these things?

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... I don't like ... I love ... I hate ... or ... is/are all right

1. I hate exams. 
2. I like exams. 
3. Exams are all right.

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ... I know a lot about ... I don't know much about ...
I'm not interested in ... I know a little about ... I don't know anything about ...

1. (history) I'm very interested in history.
2. (politics) I'm interested in politics.
3. (sport) I'm not interested in sport.
4. (art) I know a little about art.
5. (astronomy) I don't know anything about astronomy.
6. (economics) I don't know much about economics.

72.3 Which is right?

1. My favourite sport is football / the football. (football is right)
2. I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6. 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
9. 'What does your brother do?' 'He sells computers / the computers.'
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
16. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17. I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
18. Do you want to see photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday?
19. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20. Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
the ... (names of places)

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of places:
- France is a very large country. (not the France)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':
- the Czech Republic
- the United States of America (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

the -s (plural names)

We use the with plural names of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands
- the Canary Islands
- the Philippines
- the Alps

Seas, rivers etc.

We use the with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Amazon
- the (River) Nile
- the Suez Canal
- the Black Sea

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of streets, squares etc.: 
- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:
- Kennedy Airport
- Westminster Abbey
- London Zoo
- Victoria Station
- Cambridge University
- Edinburgh Castle

But we use the with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:
- the Regent Hotel
- the National Theatre
- the Science Museum
- the Odeon (cinema)

the ... of ...

We use the + names with ... of ...:
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the University of California
- the Great Wall of China
- the Tower of London

We say the north / the south / the east / the west (of ...):
- I've been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.
73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use The if necessary.

1. Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
2. The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
3. is a country in northern Europe.
4. is a river in South America.
5. is the largest continent in the world.
6. is the largest ocean.
7. is a river in Europe.
8. is a country in East Africa.
9. is between Canada and Mexico.
10. are mountains in South America.
11. is the capital of Thailand.
12. are mountains in central Europe.
13. is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14. is an island in the Caribbean.
15. are a group of islands near Florida.

16. Alps
17. Amazon
18. Andes
19. Asia
20. Atlantic
21. Bahamas
22. Bangkok
23. Cairo
24. Jamaica
25. Kenya
26. Pacific
27. Red Sea
28. Rhine
29. Sweden
30. United States

73.2 Write the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1. Kevin lives in Newton Street.
2. We went to see a play at National Theatre.
3. Have you ever been to China?
4. Have you ever been to Philippines?
5. Have you ever been to south of France?
6. Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?
7. Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?
9. Europe is bigger than Australia.
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
11. Which river is longer - Mississippi or Nile?
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
13. We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.
14. How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)?
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17. I hope to go to United States next year.
18. Mary comes from west of Ireland.
19. Alan is a student at Manchester University.
20. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.

OK

Additional exercises 33–34 (pages 269–70)
We use this/that/these/those with a noun (this picture / those girls etc.) or without a noun:

- This hotel is expensive, but it's very nice.
- Who's that girl? 'I don't know.'
- Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
- Those apples look nice. Can I have one?
- This is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
- Who's that? (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you prefer — these or those?

that = something that has happened:
- 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right'
- That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody has just said:
- 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, that's right.'
- 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, that's nice.'

We use this is ... and is that ... ? on the telephone:
- Hi Sarah, this is David. (this = the speaker)
- Is that Sarah? (that = the other person)

We use this is ... to introduce people:
- A: Brian, this is Chris.
- B: Hello, Chris — nice to meet you.
- C: Hi.

that picture (= that picture there)
those people (= those people there)
Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words: birds house plates postcards seat shoes.

1. Do you like these shoes?
2. Who lives in that house?
3. How much are these postcards?
4. Look at those birds?
5. Excuse me, is this seat free?
6. These plates are dirty.

74.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ...? or Are these/those your ...?

1. Is this your bag?
2. Is that your armchair?
3. Are these books yours?
4. Are these your keys?
5. Is this your watch?
6. Are these your glasses?

74.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that's or that.

1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
   B: That's all right.
2. A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, a pity. Why not?
   Jane: Hi Sue. How are you?
   B: Not true!
5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.
   B: Does she? I didn't know.
6. Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.
   Paul: Mark, my sister, Helen.
   Mark: Hi, Helen.
7. A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: OK. Forget it!
8. A: You're a friend of Tim's, aren't you?
   B: Yes, right.
one (a ...)

Would you like one?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

- I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
- A: Is there a bank near here?
  B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

one and ones

one (singular)

Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one

- Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

- A: Which hotel did you stay at?
  B: The one opposite the station.
- I found this key. Is it the one you lost?

the ... one

- I don't like the black coat, but I like the brown one.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one.

ones (plural)

Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those or these ones / those ones

- Which flowers do you want? These or those? or These ones or those ones?

the ones ...

- A: Which books are yours?
  B: The ones on the table.
- I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

the ... ones

- I don't like the red shoes, but I like the green ones.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some ... ones

- These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
- My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.
75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not a/an ...) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car  B has just had a cup of coffee
there's a chemist in Mill Road  B is going to get a bike
B hasn't got a pen  B hasn't got an umbrella

1 A: Can you lend me a pen?  B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
2 A: Would you like to have a car?  B: No, I don't.
3 A: Have you got a bike?  B: No, but ...
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella?  B: I'm sorry, but ...
5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  B: No, thank you.
6 A: Is there a chemist near here?  B: Yes, ...

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

better  big  clean  different  new  old

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2 I'm going to sell my car and buy a new one.
3 That's not a very good photograph, but this is better.
4 I want today's newspaper. This is different.
5 This box is too small. I need a big one.
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to a different one.

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

1 A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station.
   A: We stayed at a hotel.
   B: Which one?
   A: The one opposite the station.

2 A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green.
   A: I like those shoes.
   B: Which ones?
   A: The green ones.

3 A is looking at a house. It has a red door.
   A: That's a nice house.
   B: Which one?
   A: The one with the red door.

4 A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.
   A: Are those your CDs?
   B: Which ones?
   A: The ones on the top shelf.

5 A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black.
   A: Do you like that jacket?
   B: Which one?
   A: The black one.

6 A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.
   A: That's an interesting picture.
   B: Which one?
   A: The one on the wall.

7 A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.
   A: Do you know that girl?
   B: Which one?
   A: The tall one with long hair.

8 A is looking at some flowers in the garden.
   They're yellow.
   A: Those flowers are beautiful.
   B: Which ones?
   A: The yellow ones.

9 A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses.
   A: Who's that man?
   B: Which one?
   A: The man with the moustache and glasses.

10 A took some photos at the party last week.
    A: Did I show you my photos?
    B: Which ones?
    A: The ones from the party.
some and any

Use **some** in positive sentences:
- I'm going to buy some clothes.
- There's some ice in the fridge.
- We made some mistakes.

Use **any** in negative sentences:
- I'm not going to buy any clothes.
- There isn't any milk in the fridge.
- We didn't make any mistakes.

**any and some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (not **some**):
- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Has he got any friends?
- Do you need any help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ... ?):  
- A: Would you like some coffee?  
  B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ... ? etc.):
- A: Can I have some soup, please?  
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me some money?  
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

**some and any** without a noun

- I didn't take any photographs, but Jane took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any.' (= any luggage)
- 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are some in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

**something / somebody (or someone)**
- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).
- Would you like something to eat?
- Somebody's at the door.

**anything / anybody (or anyone)**
- She didn't say anything.
- I didn't see anybody (or anyone).
- Are you doing anything tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has anybody seen her?
76.1 Write some or any.
1. I bought some cheese, but I didn't buy any bread.
2. I'm going to the post office. I need stamps.
3. There aren't shops in this part of town.
4. Gary and Alice haven't got children.
5. Have you got brothers or sisters?
6. There are beautiful flowers in the garden.
7. Do you know good hotels in London?
8. ‘Would you like tea?’ ‘Yes, please.’
9. When we were on holiday, we visited very interesting places.
10. Don't buy rice. We don't need it.
11. I went out to buy oranges, but they didn't have in the shop.
12. I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>cheese</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>milk</th>
<th>photographs</th>
<th>questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>batteries</td>
<td>friends</td>
<td>language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo?
2. The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you.
3. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take photographs.
4. Do you speak foreign languages?
5. Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with friends of mine.
6. Can I have milk in my coffee, please?
7. The radio isn't working. There aren't batteries in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out for fresh milk.
9. A: Would you like any help?
   B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need any help.

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.
1. Jane didn't take any photographs, but she took some. (I/take)
2. ‘Where's your luggage?’ ‘I haven't got any.’ (I/not/have)
3. ‘Do you need any money?’ ‘No, thank you.’ (I/have)
4. ‘Can you lend me some money?’ ‘I'm sorry, but I don't have any.’ (I/not/have)
5. The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so I didn't buy any. (I/not/buy)
6. There were some nice oranges in the shop, so I bought some. (I/buy)
7. ‘How many phone calls did you make yesterday?’ ‘I didn't make any.’ (I/not/make)

76.4 Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.
1. A woman stopped me and said something, but I didn't understand.
2. ‘What's wrong?’ ‘There's something in my eye.’
3. Do you know anything about politics?
4. I went to the shop, but I didn't buy anything.
5. Someone has broken the window. I don't know who.
6. There isn't anything in the bag. It's empty.
7. I'm looking for my keys. Has anyone seen them?
8. Would you like anything to drink?
9. I didn't eat anything because I wasn't hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don't tell anything.
not + any

not (-n't) + any
- There aren't any cars in the car park.
- Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)
no ... = not any or not a
- There are no cars in the car park. (= there aren't any cars)
- We've got no coffee. (= we haven't got any coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's no garden. (= there isn't a garden)

We use no ... especially after have (got) and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no
- They haven't got any children. or They've got no children.
  (not They haven't got no children)
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. or There's no sugar in your coffee.

no and none

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):
- We've got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):
- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- 'Were there any problems?' 'No, none.' (= no problems)

none and no-one

none = 0 (zero)       no-one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):
- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- 'How many people did you meet?' 'None.' (= no people)

No-one is an answer for Who?:
- 'Who did you meet?' 'No-one.' or 'Nobody.'
Exercises

77.1 Write these sentences again with no.

1. We haven’t got any money. _We’ve got no money._
2. There aren’t any shops near here. _There are_.
3. Carla hasn’t got any free time. ____________________________
4. There isn’t a light in this room. ____________________________

Write these sentences again with any.

5. We’ve got no money. _We haven’t got any money._
6. There’s no milk in the fridge. ____________________________
7. There are no buses today. ____________________________
8. Tom has got no brothers or sisters. ____________________________

77.2 Write no or any.

1. There’s ______ sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he hasn’t got ______ children.
3. Sue doesn’t speak ______ foreign languages.
4. I’m afraid there’s ______ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. ‘Look at those birds!’ ‘Birds? Where? I can’t see ______ birds.’
6. ‘Do you know where Jessica is?’ ‘No, I’ve got ______ idea.’

Write no, any or none.

7. There aren’t ______ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was ______ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn’t have ______ in the shop.
10. Everything was correct. There were ______ mistakes.
11. ‘How much luggage have you got?’ ‘_______.’
12. ‘How much luggage have you got?’ ‘I haven’t got ______.’

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>answer</th>
<th>difference</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>furniture</th>
<th>heating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>problems</td>
<td>questions</td>
<td>queue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Everything was OK. There were ______ problems ______.
2. Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they’ve got ______.
3. I’m not going to answer ______.
4. He’s always alone. He’s got ______.
5. There is ______ between these two machines. They’re exactly the same.
6. There wasn’t ______ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to phone you yesterday, but there was ______.
8. The house is cold because there isn’t ______.
9. There was ______ outside the cinema, so we didn’t have to wait to get our tickets.

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? _Two_ or _A lot_ or _None._
2. How many sisters have you got?
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
4. How many photographs have you taken today?
5. How many legs has a snake got?
not + anybody/anyone/anything
nobody/no-one/nothing

(for people)

- There isn’t anybody/anyone in the room.
- There is nobody/no-one in the room.

A: Who is in the room?
B: Nobody./No-one.

-body and -one are the same:
anybody = anyone
nobody = no-one

not + anybody/anyone
I don’t know anybody(or anyone) here.
nobody = not + anybody
no-one = not + anyone
- I’m lonely. I’ve got nobody to talk to. (= I haven’t got anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no-one in it. (= There isn’t anyone in it.)

not + anything
I can’t remember anything.
nothing = not + anything
- She said nothing. (= She didn’t say anything.)
- There’s nothing to eat. (= There isn’t anything to eat.)

You can use nobody/no-one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. Nobody lives there. (not Anybody lives there)
- ‘Who did you speak to?’ ‘No-one.’
- Nothing happened. (not Anything happened)
- ‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing.’

Remember: negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing

- He doesn’t know anything. (not He doesn’t know nothing)
- Don’t tell anybody. (not Don’t tell nobody)
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not There isn’t nothing)

some and any → Unit 76 any and no → Unit 77 somebody/anything/nowhere etc. → Unit 79
78.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1. There isn't anything in the bag.
   There's nothing in the bag.
2. There isn't anybody in the office.
   There's nobody in the office.
3. I haven't got anything to do.
   I haven't got no-one to help me.
4. There isn't anything on TV.
   There wasn't anything on TV.
5. There wasn't anyone at home.
   There wasn't anyone at home.
6. We didn't find anything.
   We didn't find anything.

78.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.

1. There isn't anything in the bag.
   There's nothing in the bag.
2. There wasn't anyone on the bus.
   There wasn't anybody on the bus.
3. I haven't got nothing to read.
   I haven't got nothing to read.
4. I've got no-one to help me.
   I've got no-one to help me.
5. She heard nothing.
   She heard nothing.
6. We've got nothing for dinner.
   We've got nothing for dinner.

78.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.

5a. Who knows the answer? Nobody.
7a. Who was late? Nobody.
4a. Who did you meet? No-one.
8a. Who was it? Nobody.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use nobody/no-one/thing or anybody/anyone/anything:

1b. I didn't say anything.
2b. Nobody saw me.
3b. I don't know the answer.
4b. I'm afraid I can't help you.
5b. ‘What did you have to eat?’ ‘I wasn’t hungry.’
6b. I wasn’t hungry.
7b. Helen was sitting alone. She wasn’t with anyone.
8b. I don’t know where she is.

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use: nobody / no-one / nothing or anybody / anyone / anything

1. That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
2. Jack has a bad memory. He can’t remember anything.
3. Be quiet! Don’t say anything.
4. I didn’t know about the meeting.
5. ‘What did you have to eat?’ ‘I wasn’t hungry.’
6. I didn’t eat anything.
7. Helen was sitting alone. She wasn’t with anyone.
8. I’m afraid I can’t help you. There’s nothing I can do.
9. I don’t know anything about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn’t cost anything to go in.
11. I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was nobody there.
12. The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn’t understand anything.
13. ‘What are you doing tonight?’ ‘Why?’
14. Helen has gone away. Nobody knows where she is. She didn’t tell anyone where she was going.
somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

**A**

**Somebody** (or **Someone**) has broken the window.

**Somebody/someone** = a person, but we don’t know who

**She has got something** in her mouth.

**Something** = a thing, but we don’t know what

**Tom lives somewhere** near London.

**somewhere** = in/to a place, but we don’t know where

**B**

**people (-body or -one)**

- **somebody** or **someone**
  - There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.
  - Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door?
  - There isn’t **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door.
  - There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) at the door.

- **-body** and **-one** are the same: **somebody = someone, nobody = no-one** etc.

**things (-thing)**

- **something**
  - Lucy said **something**, but I didn’t understand what she said.
  - Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?

- **anything**
  - I was angry, but I didn’t say **anything**.

- **nothing**
  - ‘What did you say?’ ‘**Nothing**’

**places (-where)**

- **somewhere**
  - Ruth’s parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.
  - Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?

- **anywhere**
  - I’m staying here. I’m **not** going **anywhere**.

- **nowhere**
  - I don’t like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

**something/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)**

- Did you meet **anybody** **interesting** at the party?
  - We always go to the same place. Let’s go **somewhere** **different**.
  - ‘What’s that letter?’ ‘**It’s nothing important**.’

**C**

**D**

- I’m hungry. I want **something** to eat. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony hasn’t got **anybody** to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere** to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

**some and any** → **Unit 76**  **any and no** → **Unit 77**  **anybody/nothing etc.** → **Unit 78**

**everything/-body/-where** → **Unit 80**
Exercises

79.1 Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

1 Lucy said something.
2 I've lost something.
3 Sue and Tom went somewhere.
4 I'm going to phone somewhere.

What did she say?
What have you lost?
Where did they go?
Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

1 What did you say? Nothing.
2 Where are you going? Nothing.
4 Who are you looking for? Nothing.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use no + anybody/anything/anywhere.

1b I didn't say anything.
2b I'm not...
3b I want to...
4b I want to...

79.3 Write somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

1 It's dark. I can't see anything.
2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
3 Do you know about computers?
4 'Listen! What? I can't hear.'
5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for ...
6 We need to talk. There's I want to tell you.
7 'Did see the accident?' 'No, ...'
8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat ...
9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. knows.'
10 'Do you know in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'
11 'What's in that cupboard?' 'It's empty.'
12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them ...
13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live ... warm.
14 Is there interesting on television tonight?
15 Have you ever met famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something    anything    nothing    something    anywhere    nowhere    something    anywhere    nowhere


1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go.
2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got ...
3 I'm bored. I've got ...
4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't ...'
5 'Would you like a glass of water?' 'Yes, please.'
6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's ...
7 I want to buy a magazine.
8 I need in London. Can you recommend a hotel?
every and all

every

Every house in the street is the same.
every house in the street = all the houses in the street

We use every + singular noun (every house / every country etc.):
- Sarah has been to every country in Europe.
- Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different every time I see her.

Use a singular verb after every ... :
- Every house in the street is the same. (not are the same)
- Every country has a national flag. (not have)

Compare every and all:
- Every student in the class passed the exam.
- Every country has a national flag.
- All the students in the class passed the exam.
- All countries have a national flag.

every day and all day

every day = on all days:

![Diagram showing every day]

- It rained every day last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening. (= on all evenings)
  also every morning/night/summer etc.

all day = the complete day:

![Diagram showing all day]

- It rained all day yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV all evening. (= the complete evening)
  also all morning/night/summer etc.

everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

- Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked everywhere for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything:
- Everybody has problems. (not Everybody have)
80.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>day</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>student</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Every student in the class passed the exam.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>My job is very boring. the same.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>in the hotel has satellite TV.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it, but not. '</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

80.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

1. Yesterday it rained... all day... |
2. I buy a newspaper... but sometimes I don't read it. |
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home. |
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee... |
5. Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed. |
6. I'm tired now because I've been working hard. |
7. Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained... |

80.3 Write every or all.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours... evening. |
2. Julia gets up at 6:30... morning. |
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside... afternoon. |
4. I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away... week. |
5. 'How often do you go skiing?'... year. Usually in March.' |
6. A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday? 
   B: Yes, I was at home... morning. I went out after lunch. |
7. My sister loves new cars. She buys one... year. |
8. I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me... evening. |
9. We go away on holiday for two or three weeks... summer. |

80.4 Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

1. Everybody needs friends. |
2. Chris knows... about computers. |
3. I like the people here... is very friendly. |
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and... is very clean. |
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes... by motorcycle. |
6. Let's get something to eat... is hungry. |
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books... |
8. You are right... you say is true. |

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1. Everybody has problems. |
3. The house is empty. Everyone gone out. |
4. Gary is very popular. Everybody him. |
5. This town is completely different now. Everything changed. |
6. I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone asleep. |
7. Everybody mistakes! |
8. A: everything clear? everybody know what to do? 
   B: Yes, we all understand. |
all | most | some | any | no/none

Compare:

Children/money/books etc. (in general):
- Children like playing.
  (= children in general)
- Money isn't everything.
  (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books etc.:
- Where are the children?
  (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven't got
  the money. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read these books?
- I often go out with my friends.

most / most of ... , some / some of ... etc.

most/some etc. + noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of cities</td>
<td>children</td>
<td>books</td>
<td>money</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Most children like playing.
  (= children in general)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got no friends.
- All cities have the same problems.
  (= cities in general)

Do not use of in these sentences:
- Most people drive too fast.
  (not Most of people)
- Some birds can't fly.
  (not Some of birds)

most of/some of etc. + the/this/this etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

You can say all the ... or all of the ... (with or without of):
- All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students ...)
- Silvia has lived in London all her life.
  (or ... all of her life.)

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can have some of this cake, but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
  B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books, but I haven't read any of them.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' 'None of them.'
Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of / most of etc.).

1. Most of children like playing. (most)
2. Some of this money is yours. (some)
3. people never stop talking. (some)
4. the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)
5. You can change your money in banks. (most)
6. I don't like the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost his money. (all)
8. my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know the people in this photograph? (any)
10. birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed the film, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. the hotels are full. (all)
14. You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (most)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use: all/most/some/none + of them / of it

1. How many of the people are women? (Most of them)
2. How many of the boxes are on the table? (Most of them)
3. How many of the men are wearing hats? (Most of them)
4. How many of the windows are open? (Most of them)
5. How many of the people are standing? (Most of them)
6. How much of the money is Ben's? (Most of them)

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Most of children like playing. (Most children)
2. All the students failed the exam. (Most of them)
3. Some of people work too hard. (Some of them)
4. Some of questions in the exam were very easy. (Some of them)
5. I haven't seen any of those people before. (None of them)
6. All of insects have six legs. (All of them)
7. Have you read all these books? (All of them)
8. Most of students in our class are very nice. (Most of them)
9. Most of my friends are going to the party. (Most of them)
10. I'm very tired this morning — I was awake most of night. (Most of them)
We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:

- Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (both = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (either = tea or coffee)
- \( \text{A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?} \)
  \( \text{B: Neither. I want to stay at home.} \) (neither = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare either and neither:

- "Would you like tea or coffee?"  
  \( \text{Either. I don't mind.} \) (= tea or coffee)  
  \( \text{I don't want either.} \) (not I don't want neither)  
  "Neither." (not tea or coffee)

**both/either/neither + noun**

- **Both** + plural  
  windows/books/children etc.
- **Either** + singular  
  window/book/child etc.

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

**both of... / either of... / neither of...**

| both  | of | the ...
|-------|----|--------
| either | these/those ... |
| neither | my/your/Paul's ...

- **Neither of my parents** is British.
- I haven't read *either of these books*.

You can say both of the/those/my ..., or both the/those/my ... (with or without of):  
- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- **Both of Paul's sisters are married.** or **Both Paul's sisters are married.**
  \( \text{but Neither of Paul's sisters is married.} \) (not Neither Paul's sisters)

**both of them / neither of us**

| both  | of | them
|------|----|-----
| either | as |
| neither | you

- Paul has got two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know **either of them**.

I can't either / neither can I — **Unit 42**
82.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked ______________ cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like ______________ of them.
3. It was a good football match. ____________________ teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football match. ____________________ team played well.
5. ‘Is your friend English or American?’ ‘___________________. She's Australian.’
6. We went away for two days, but the weather wasn't good. It rained ______________ days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: ____________________. It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but ______________ of them came.
9. ‘Do you go to work by car or by bus?’ ‘___________________. I always walk.’
10. ‘Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?’ ‘I don’t like ______________ of them.’
11. ‘Do you work or are you a student?’ ‘__________________. I work and I'm a student too.’
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because ______________ of us had a watch.
13. Helen has got two sisters and a brother. ______________ of her sisters are married.
14. Helen has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother, but I haven't met ______________ of her sisters.

82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ...

1. Both cups are ______________ empty.
2. ______________ are open.
3. ______________ are wearing a hat.

ANSWER
7+8=13
7+8=16

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ...

1. Are you married? No No ______________ married.
3. Are you a student? Yes Yes ______________ students.
4. Have you got a car? No No ______________ a car.
6. Do you like cooking? Yes Yes ______________ cooking.
7. Can you play the piano? No No ______________ piano.
8. Do you read newspapers? Yes Yes ______________ newspapers.
a lot of money  not much money  a lot of books  not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun* (much food / much money etc.):
- Did you buy much food?
- We haven't got much luggage.
- How much money do you want?
- A: Have you got any money?
  B: I've got some, but not much.

We use **many** + *plural noun* (many books / many people etc.):
- Did you buy many books?
- We don't know many people.
- How many photos did you take?
- A: Did you take any photos?
  B: I took some, but not many.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:
- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula hasn't got a lot of free time.

We say:
- There is a lot of food/money/water ... (singular verb)
- There are a lot of trees/shops/people ... (plural verb)
- A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)

We use **much** in questions and *negative sentences*:
- Do you drink much coffee?
- I don't drink much coffee.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*:
- I drink a lot of coffee. (not I drink much coffee)
- 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, a lot.' (not Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):
- We've got many friends / a lot of friends.
- We haven't got many friends / a lot of friends.
- Have you got many friends / a lot of friends?

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:
- Donna spoke to me, but she didn't say much.
- 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. (not go to the cinema much)
- I don't like him very much.
83.1 Write much or many.

1 Did you buy much food?
2 There aren't many hotels in this town.
3 We haven't got much petrol. We need to stop and get some.
4 Were there many people on the train?
5 Did many students fail the exam?
6 Paula hasn't got much money.
7 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat much.
8 I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for many years.

Write How much or How many.

9 How many people are coming to the party?
10 How much milk do you want in your coffee?
11 How much bread did you buy?
12 How many players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use much or many with these words:

- books  countries  luggage  people  time  times

1 I don't read very much. I haven't got many books.
2 Hurry up! We haven't got much luggage.
3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to many countries?
4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know many people.
5 'Have you got any luggage?' 'No, only this bag.'
6 I know Tokyo well. I've been there many times.

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use a lot of + these words:

- accidents  books  fun  interesting things  traffic

1 I like reading. I have a lot of books.
2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw many interesting things.
3 This road is very dangerous. There are many accidents.
4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had a lot of fun.
5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was a lot of traffic.

83.4 In some of these sentences much is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.

1 Do you drink much coffee? OK a lot of tea.
2 I drink much tea.
3 It was a cold winter. We had much snow.
4 There wasn't much snow last winter.
5 It costs much money to travel around the world.
6 We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much.
7 Do you know much about computers?
8 'Have you got any luggage?' ‘Yes, much.’

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use much and a lot.

1 Jim loves films. (go to the cinema) He goes to the cinema a lot.
2 Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) She doesn't watch TV much.
3 Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She
4 Martin doesn't like driving. (use his car) He
5 Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)
6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel)
(a) little   (a) few

(a) little + uncountable noun:
(a) little water
(a) little time
(a) little money
(a) little soup

(a) few + plural noun:
(a) few books
(a) few questions
(a) few people
(a) few days

a little water

a few books

a little = some but not much
☐ She didn’t eat anything, but she drank a little water.
☐ I speak a little Spanish.
(= some Spanish but not much)
☐ A: Can you speak Spanish?
   B: A little.

a few = some but not many
☐ Excuse me, I have to make a few phone calls.
☐ We’re going away for a few days.
☐ I speak a few words of Spanish.
☐ A: Are there any shops near here?
   B: Yes, a few.

× little (without a) = nearly no or nearly nothing
☐ There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:
☐ Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

× few (without a) = nearly no
☐ There were few people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.

You can say very few:
☐ Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.

little and a little

A little is a positive idea:
☐ They have a little money, so they’re not poor. (= they have some money)

Little (or very little) is a negative idea:
☐ They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

I’ve got a little money.

few and a few

A few is a positive idea:
☐ I’ve got a few friends, so I’m not lonely. (= I’ve got some friends)

Few (or very few) is a negative idea:
☐ I’m sad and I’m lonely. I’ve got few friends. (= nearly no friends)

I’ve got few friends.
84.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.
1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
2 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes, please.'
3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
4 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, a few.'
5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, please.'
6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes, please.'

84.2 Write a little or a few + these words:
chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times years
1 Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years.
2 Can I have sugar in my coffee, please?
3 'When did Julia go away?' 'She went away a few weeks ago.'
4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak Russian.'
5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with my friend.'
6 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'Yes, a few times.'
7 There wasn't much furniture in the room - just a table and a few chairs.
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need a little fresh air.

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:
coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work
1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2 I drink very little coffee. I don't like it.
3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is very little rain.
4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are very few hotels.
5 Hurry up. We've got very little time to go out.
6 The town is very quiet at night. There are very few people in the office.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do very little work.

84.4 Write little / a little or few / a few.
1 There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2 'When did Sarah go out?' 'She went out a few minutes ago.'
3 I can't decide now. I need more time to think about it.
4 There was too much traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 The bus service isn't very good at night - there are very few buses after 9 o'clock.
6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, please.'
7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have very little opportunity.

84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.
1 We're going away for a few days next week. for a few days
2 Everybody needs little luck.
3 I can't talk to you now - I've got few things to do.
4 I eat very little meat - I don't like it very much.
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
6 There were little people on the bus - it was nearly empty.
7 Martin is a very private person. Few people know him.
old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

A adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective + noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s a nice day today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laura has got brown eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s a very old bridge in this village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like Italian food?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t speak any foreign languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some beautiful yellow flowers in the garden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The adjective is before the noun:
- They live in a modern house. (not a house modern)
- Have you met any famous people? (not people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:
- a different place different places (not different)

B be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The weather is nice today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These flowers are very beautiful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you cold? Shall I close the window?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m hungry. Can I have something to eat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The film wasn’t very good. It was boring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please be quiet. I’m reading.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘You look tired.’ ‘Yes, I feel tired.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gary told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m not going to eat this fish. It doesn’t smell good.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He is feels looks</th>
<th>tired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They are look sound</td>
<td>happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is smells tastes</td>
<td>good.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
85.1 Put the words in the right order.
1 (new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house.
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) I like the green jacket.
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do you like classical music?
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) I had a wonderful holiday.
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>clouds</th>
<th>foreign</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>sharp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Do you speak any ___ foreign ___ languages?___
2 Look at those ___________ It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a ___________
4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no ___________
5 Can you open the window? We need some ___________
6 I need a ___________ to cut these onions.
7 Fire-fighting is a ___________

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

| feel(s) | look(s) | sound(s) | + | happy | ill | nice | horrible | new | surprised |

1 You ___________ happy
2 It ___________
3 ___________
4 You ___________
5 They ___________
6 ___________

85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete 8's sentences. Use feel/look etc.

A
1 You look tired.
2 This is a new coat.
3 I'm American.
4 You look cold.
5 These bags are heavy.
6 That soup looks good.

B
1 Don't feel tired. (feel)
2 It doesn't ___________ (look)
3 You ___________ (sound)
4 Do I? I ___________ (feel)
5 They ___________ (look)
6 Maybe, but it ___________ (taste)
quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

He ate his dinner very quickly. Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>sudden</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>heavy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → easily heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>Sue is very quiet.</th>
<th>Be careful!</th>
<th>It was a bad game.</th>
<th>I felt nervous.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sue speaks very quietly. (not speaks very quiet)</td>
<td>Listen carefully! (not listen careful)</td>
<td>Our team played badly. (not played bad)</td>
<td>I waited nervously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It's raining heavily.

hard fast late early

These words are adjectives and adverbs:

- Sue's job is very hard.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- The bus was late/early.
- Sue works very hard. (not hardly)
- Ben can run fast.
- I went to bed late/early.

good (adjective) → well (adverb)

- Your English is very good.
- It was a good game.
- You speak English very well. (not very good)
- Our team played well.

But well is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?'  'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'

adjectives → Unit 85
Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily  badly  dangerously  fast  heavily  quietly

1. It's raining ___________________.
2. He sings very ___________________.
3. They came in ___________________.
4. She shouted at me ___________________.
5. She can run very ___________________.
6. He was driving ___________________.

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come  know  sleep  win  explain  listen  think  work  carefully  clearly  hard  well
carefully  easily  quickly  well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please ___________________.
2. They ___________________. At the end of the day they're always tired.
3. I'm tired this morning. I didn't ___________________. last night.
4. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always ___________________.
5. ___________________. before you answer the question.
6. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't ___________________. her very ___________________.
7. Our teacher doesn't ___________________. things very ___________________. We never understand him.
8. Helen! I need your help. ___________________.

86.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6. Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
7. 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
8. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10. Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
11. I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

86.4 Write good or well.

1. Your English is very ___________________. You speak it very ___________________.
2. Jackie did very ____________ in her exams.
3. The party was very ____________ . I enjoyed it very much.
4. Martin has a difficult job, but he does it ____________ .
5. How are your parents? Are they ____________ ?
6. Did you have a ____________ holiday? Was the weather ____________ ?
Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms. The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

older/heavier etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:
old → older slow → slower cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer late → later big → bigger

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → bigger hot → hotter thin → thinner

Words ending in -y → -ier:
easy → easier heavy → heavier early → earlier

- Rome is old, but Athens is older. (not more old)
- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not more cheap)
- Helen wants a bigger car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is nicer.
- Don't take the bus. It's easier to take a taxi. (not more easy)

far → further:
- 'How far is it to the station? A mile?' 'No, it's further. About two miles.'

more ...

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more ...:
careful → more careful polite → more polite
expensive → more expensive interesting → more interesting

- You must be more careful.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

good/well → better bad → worse
- The weather wasn't very good yesterday, but it's better today.
- 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel worse.'
- Which is worse — a headache or a toothache?
87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

87.2 Write the comparative.

1 old older
2 strong
3 happy
4 modern
5 important
6 good
7 large
8 serious
9 pretty
10 crowded

87.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger
2 colder
3 cheaper
4 better
5 nearer
6 easier

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Helen's car isn’t very big. She wants a _______ one.
2 My job isn’t very interesting. I want to do something _______.
3 You’re not very tall. Your brother is _______.
4 David doesn’t work very hard. I work _______.
5 My chair isn’t very comfortable. Yours is _______.
6 Your idea isn’t very good. My idea is _______.
7 These flowers aren’t very nice. The blue ones are _______.
8 My bag isn’t very heavy. Your bag is _______.
9 I’m not very interested in art. I’m _______ in history.
10 It isn’t very warm today. It was _______ yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don’t taste very good. The other ones tasted _______.
12 Britain isn’t very big. France is _______.
13 London isn’t very beautiful. Paris is _______.
14 This knife isn’t very sharp. Have you got a _______ one?
15 People today aren’t very polite. In the past they were _______.
16 The weather isn’t too bad today. Often it is much _______
older than ...  more expensive than ...

She's taller than him. 

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

We use than after comparatives (older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.):

- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to take a taxi than to take the bus.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

We usually say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them.

You can say:

- I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

more/less than ...

- A: How much did your shoes cost? £50?
- B: No, more than that. (= more than £50)
- The film was very short — less than an hour.
- They've got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.

a bit older / much older etc.

Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Sue is a bit older than Gary — she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.
### Exercises

#### 88.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liz</th>
<th>Ben</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I'm 26.</td>
<td>1 I'm 24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I'm not a very good swimmer.</td>
<td>2 I'm a very good swimmer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.</td>
<td>3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I start work at 8 o'clock.</td>
<td>4 I start work at 8.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I don't work very hard.</td>
<td>5 I work very hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I haven't got much money.</td>
<td>6 I've got a lot of money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I'm a very good driver.</td>
<td>7 I'm not a very good driver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I'm not very patient.</td>
<td>8 I'm very patient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 I'm not a very good dancer.</td>
<td>9 I'm a good dancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 I'm very intelligent.</td>
<td>10 I'm not very intelligent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 I speak French very well.</td>
<td>11 I don't speak French very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 I don't go to the cinema very much.</td>
<td>12 I go to the cinema a lot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 88.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

1 He isn't very tall. You’re **taller than him** (OR taller than he is).
2 She isn’t very old. You’re **younger than her** (OR younger than she is).
3 I don’t work very hard. You work **harder than I do** (OR harder than I do).
4 He doesn’t watch TV very much. You watch **more TV than he does** (OR more TV than he does).
5 I’m not a very good cook. You cook **better than I do** (OR better than I do).
6 We don’t know many people. You know **more people than we do** (OR more people than we do).
7 They haven’t got much money. You have **more money than they have** (OR more money than they have).
8 I can’t run very fast. You run **faster than I can** (OR faster than I can).
9 She hasn’t been here very long. You’ve been **there longer than she has** (OR longer than she has).
10 They didn’t get up very early. You got up **earlier than they did** (OR earlier than they did).
11 He wasn’t very surprised. You were **more surprised than he was** (OR more surprised than he was).

#### 88.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + comparative (older/better etc.).

1 Emma is 25. Gary is 24½.
   **Emma is a bit older than Gary.**
2 Jack’s mother is 52. His father is 69.
   **Jack’s mother is much older than his father.**
3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.
   **My camera is a bit cheaper than yours.**
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   **I feel much better today.**
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
   **It’s much warmer today.**
6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I’m not very good.
   **Sarah is a lot better at tennis than I am.**
not as ... as

She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.

Box A isn't **as big as** Box B.

☐ Rome is **not as old as** Athens. *(= Athens is older)*
☐ The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive as** the Europa. *(= the Europa is more expensive)*
☐ I **don't play tennis as often as** you. *(= you play more often)*
☐ The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold.** *(= as cold as it was yesterday)*

**not as much as ... / not as many as ...**

☐ I haven't got **as much money as** you. *(= you've got more money)*
☐ I don't know **as many people as** you. *(= you know more people)*
☐ I don't go out **as much as** you. *(= you go out more)*

Compare **not as ... as** and **than**:

☐ Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
   Athens is **older than** Rome. *(not older as Rome)*
☐ Tennis **isn't as popular as** football.
   Football is **more popular than** tennis.
☐ I **don't go out as much as** you.
   You go out **more than me.**

We usually say: **as me / as him / as her** etc.

You can say:

☐ She's not as old **as him.** or She's not as old as **he is.**
☐ You don't work as hard **as me.** or You don't work as hard as **I do.**

We say **the same as ... :**

☐ The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
☐ My hair is **the same colour as** yours.
☐ I arrived at **the same time as** Tim.
Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1. A is bigger than C, but not as big as B.
2. A is not as big as B, but not C.
3. C is not as big as A, but A.
4. A is A, but not B.
5. B has got C, but not A.
6. C works A.

89.2 Write sentences with as ... as ...

1. Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn’t as old as Athens.
2. My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn’t as big as mine.
3. You got up earlier than me. I didn’t get up as early as you.
4. We played better than them. They played as well as us.
5. I’ve been here longer than you. You’ve been here as long as me.
6. She’s more nervous than him. He’s as nervous as she.

89.3 Write as or than.

1. Athens is older than Rome. 5. Joe isn’t as intelligent as he thinks.
2. I don’t watch TV as much as you. 6. Belgium is smaller than Switzerland.
3. You eat more than me. 7. Brazil isn’t as big as Canada.
4. I’m more tired today than I was yesterday. 8. I can’t wait longer than an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use the same age / the same street etc.

Julia

1. (age) I’m 22. Andy is the same age as Laura.

2. (street) Julia lives in Hill Street.

3. (time) Julia got up at 7.15.

4. (colour) Andy’s car is dark blue.

Laura

1. (age) I’m 24.

2. (street) I live in Hill Street.

3. (time) I got up at 7.45.

4. (colour) My car is dark blue.
the oldest the most expensive

Box A is bigger than Box B.
Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.
Box A is the biggest box.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.
The Europa Hotel is more expensive than all the other hotels in the city.
The Europa Hotel is the most expensive hotel in the city.

Bigger / older / more expensive etc. are comparative forms (→ Unit 87).
Biggest / oldest / most expensive etc. are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est (oldest) or most ... (most expensive).

| Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the -est: |
| old → the oldest | cheap → the cheapest | nice → the nicest |
| but good → the best | bad → the worst |

| Spelling (→ Appendix 5): |
| big → the biggest | hot → the hottest |

| Words ending in -y (easy/heavy etc.) → the -iest: |
| easy → the easiest | heavy → the heaviest | pretty → the prettiest |

| Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most ...: |
| careful → the most careful | interesting → the most interesting |

We say the oldest ... / the most expensive ... etc. (with the):

- The church is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
  (= it is older than all the other buildings)
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn’t the most important thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. without a noun:

- Ken is a good player, but he isn’t the best in the team.
  (the best = the best player)

You can use superlative + I’ve ever ... / you’ve ever ... etc.:

- The film was very bad. I think it’s the worst film I’ve ever seen.
- What is the most unusual thing you’ve ever done?
90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big/small</td>
<td>long/short</td>
<td>young/old</td>
<td>expensive/cheap</td>
<td>good/bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A/D) A is bigger than D.</td>
<td>(C/A) C is the longest.</td>
<td>(D/C) D is the youngest.</td>
<td>(C/A) A is the most expensive.</td>
<td>(A/C) A is the best.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) A is the biggest.</td>
<td>(B) B is the shortest.</td>
<td>(B) D is the smallest.</td>
<td>(C) A is the cheapest.</td>
<td>(A) A is the worst.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's __________________________ in the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was __________________________ of my life.
3. It's a very good film. It's __________________________ I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's __________________________ in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was __________________________ I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty village. It's __________________________ of the year.
7. It was a very cold day. It was __________________________ I've ever seen.
8. He's a very boring person. He's __________________________ I've ever met.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.). Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sydney</th>
<th>Alaska</th>
<th>Everest</th>
<th>the Nile</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>large</th>
<th>country</th>
<th>river</th>
<th>city</th>
<th>state</th>
<th>mountain</th>
<th>planet</th>
<th>Africa</th>
<th>Australia</th>
<th>the USA</th>
<th>South America</th>
<th>the solar system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3. Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
4. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
5. Brazil is the largest country in South America.
6. Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system.
enough

She isn’t going to take a taxi.
She hasn’t got enough money.

He can’t reach the shelf.
He isn’t tall enough.

**enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)**
- ‘Is there **enough** milk in your coffee?’  ‘Yes, thank you.’
- We wanted to play football, but we didn’t have **enough** players.
- Why don’t you buy a car? You’ve got **enough** money. (not money enough)

**enough without a noun**
- I’ve got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- ‘Would you like some more to eat?’  ‘No, thanks. I’ve had enough.’
- You’re always at home. You don’t go out **enough**.

**adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)**
- ‘Shall we sit outside?’  ‘No, it isn’t warm enough.’ (not enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud **enough** for you?
- Don’t buy that coat. It’s nice, but it isn’t **long** enough. (= it’s too short)

Remember:

**enough + noun ** but **adjective + enough**

- **enough** money  **tall** enough
- **enough** time  **good** enough
- **enough** people  **old** enough

We say:

- **enough for somebody/something**
  - This pullover isn’t **big enough** for me.
  - I haven’t got **enough money** for a new car.
  - I haven’t got **enough money to buy** a new car. (not for buy)
  - Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (not for have)
  - There aren’t **enough chairs for everybody** to sit down.
Exercises

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + these words:
- chairs
- money
- paint
- wind

1. She hasn’t got __________ money.  2. There aren’t __________ chairs.
3. She hasn’t got __________ money.  4. There isn’t __________ wind.

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + enough:
- big
- long
- strong
- tall

1. He __________ tall enough.
2. The car __________ long enough.
3. His legs aren’t __________ strong enough.
4. He __________ tall enough.

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:
- big
- eat
- loud
- milk
- old
- practise
- space
- time
- tired

1. ‘Is there __________ milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it __________ loud for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants – he’s __________ old for you.
4. When I visited New York last year, I didn’t have __________ time to see all the things I wanted to see.
5. This house isn’t __________ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn’t __________
7. My office is very small. There isn’t __________ space.
8. It’s late, but I don’t want to go to bed now. I’m not __________
9. Lisa isn’t a very good tennis player because she doesn’t __________

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:
- enough money to buy
- tomatoes
- sharp/cut
- swimming
- bread/make
- well/win
- time/read

1. We haven’t got __________ money to buy __________ a new car.
2. This knife isn’t __________ for cutting tomatoes.
3. The water wasn’t __________ for swimming.
4. Have we got __________ bread to make __________ sandwiches?
5. We played well, but not __________ the game.
6. I don’t have __________ newspapers time to read.
His shoes are too big for him.

There is too much sugar in it.

**too**

**too** + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)
- Can you turn the radio down?
  - It's too loud. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.

**too much / too many** = more than you want, more than is good:
- I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

Compare too and not enough:
- The hat is too big for him.
- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate too much.

**too big**

- The hat isn't big enough for him. (= it's too small)
- The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don't eat enough.

**not big enough**

We say:
- These shoes are too big for me.
- It's a small house — too small for a large family.
- I'm too tired to go out. (not for go out)
- It's too cold to sit outside.
- She speaks too fast for me to understand.

**too ... for somebody/something**

**too ... to do something**

**too ... for somebody to do something**
Exercises

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + these words:

big crowded fast heavy loud low

1 The music is too loud.
2 The box is too crowded.
3 The net is too fast.
4 She's driving too hard.
5 The ball is too heavy.
6 The museum is too crowded.

92.2 Write too / too much / too many or enough.

1 You're always at home. You don't go out enough.
2 I don't like the weather here. There's too much rain.
3 I can't wait for them. I haven't got enough time.
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were too many people.
5 You're always tired. I think you work too hard.
6 'Did you have enough to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
7 You drink enough coffee. It's not good for you.
8 You don't eat enough vegetables. You should eat more.
9 I don't like the weather here. It's too cold.
10 Our team didn't play well. We made too many mistakes.
11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not enough.'

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use too or enough with these words:

1 I couldn't work. I was too tired.
2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It isn't loud enough.
3 I don't want to walk home. It's too far.
4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It's too expensive.
5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It's too big.
6 I couldn't do the exercise. It's too difficult.
7 Your work needs to be better. It's too poor.
8 I can't talk to you now. I'm too busy.
9 I thought the film was boring. It was too long.

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use too (+ adjective) + to ...

1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's too cold to go out.
2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's too late to go to bed.
3 (they're not getting married / young) They're too young to get married.
4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It's too dangerous to go out.
5 (don't phone Sue now / late) It's too late to phone Sue.
6 (I didn't say anything / surprised) I was too surprised to say anything.
He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

verb + object

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together. We say:

☐ Sue reads a newspaper every day. (not Sue reads every day a newspaper)

verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not He speaks very well English)

I like Italian food very much. (not I like very much ...)

Did you watch television all evening? (not Did you watch all evening ...)

Paul often wears a black hat. (not Paul wears often ...)

We invited a lot of people to the party.

I opened the door slowly.

Why do you always make the same mistake?

I'm going to borrow some money from the bank.

where and when

We went to a party last night.

Place (where?) is usually before time (when?). We say:

☐ We went to a party last night. (not We went last night to a party)

place (where?) + time (when? how long? how often?)

Lisa walks to work every day. (not ... every day to work)

Will you be at home this evening? (not ... this evening at home)

I usually go to bed early. (not ... early to bed)

We arrived at the airport at 7 o’clock.

They’ve lived in the same house for 20 years.

Joe’s father has been in hospital since June.

word order in questions — Units 44–46 always/usually/often etc. — Unit 94
Exercises

Unit 93

93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Did you watch all evening television? Did you watch television all evening?
2. Sue reads a newspaper every day. Ok...
3. I like very much this picture. Ok...
4. Tom started last week his new job. Ok...
5. I want to speak English fluently. Ok...
6. Jane bought for her friend a present. Ok...
7. I drink every day three cups of coffee. Ok...
8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly! Ok...
9. I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds. Ok...

93.2 Put the words in order.

1. (the door / opened / I / slowly) I opened the door slowly.
2. (a new computer / I / last week / bought) I bought a new computer last week.
3. (finished / Paul / quickly / his work) Paul finished his work quickly.
4. (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak) Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5. (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday) I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6. (London / do you know / well?) Do you know London well?
7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) We enjoyed the party very much.
8. (the problem / carefully / 1 / explained) I explained the problem carefully.
9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met) We met some friends at the airport.
10. (did you buy / in England / that jacket?) Did you buy that jacket in England?
11. (every day / do / the same thing / we) We do the same thing every day.
12. (football / don't like / very much / I) I don't like football very much.

93.3 Put the words in order.

1. (to work / every day / walks / Lisa) Lisa walks to work every day.
2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I arrived at the hotel early.
3. (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia) Julia goes to Italy every year.
4. (we / since 1988 / here / have lived) We have lived here since 1988.
5. (in London / Sue / in 1980 / was born) Sue was born in London in 1980.
6. (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work) Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
7. (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen) Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
8. (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had) I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
9. (in September / Barbara / to university / is going) Barbara is going to university in September.
10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw) I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
11. (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States) My parents have been to the United States many times.
12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant) My umbrella I left in the restaurant last night.
13. (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?) Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
14. (the children / 1 / took / this morning / to school) I took the children to school this morning.
always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

These words (always/never etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>ever</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>also</th>
<th>already</th>
<th>all</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usually</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>seldom</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>both</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She's always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- 'Don't forget to phone Laura.' 'I've already phoned her.'
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.

Always/never etc. are before the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>never</th>
<th>etc.</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I always drink coffee in the morning.
  (not I drink always coffee)
- Helen often goes to London.
  (not Helen goes often)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball.
  (not He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They all live in London.

But always/never etc. are after am/is/are/was/were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>were</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I am always tired. (not I always am tired)
- They are never at home during the day.
- It is usually very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I was often late for school.
- 'Where's Laura?' 'She's still in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.

Always/never etc. are between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb 1</th>
<th>verb 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Egypt?
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She's just gone out. (She's = She has)
- My friends have all gone to the cinema.
94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with often/never etc.

1. Do you ever play tennis? Yes, often.
2. Do you get up early? Yes, always.
3. Are you ever late for work? No, never.
5. Do you ever go swimming? Rarely.
6. Are you at home in the evenings? Yes, usually.

94.2 Write these sentences with never/always/usually etc.
1. My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan is always polite.
3. I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4. Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah has just started a new job.
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6. The bus isn't late. (usually) The bus is usually not late.
7. I don't eat fish. (often) I often don't eat fish.
8. I will forget what you said. (never) I never will forget what you said.
9. Have you lost your passport? (ever) Have you ever lost your passport?
10. Do you work in the same place? (still) Do you still work in the same place?
11. They stay in the same hotel. (always) They always stay in the same hotel.
12. Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) Jane usually doesn't work on Saturdays.
13. Is Tina here? (already) Is Tina already here?
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) What do you usually have for breakfast?
15. I can remember his name. (never) I never can remember his name.

94.3 Write sentences with also.
1. Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis.
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I also speak French.
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and I also feel hungry.
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, and I also have been to Ireland.
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4 Write sentences with both and all.

1. They both live in London.
2. They are both married.
3. They both play football.
4. They are both students.
5. They both live in London.
6. They all live in London.
7. They all play football.
8. They are all students.
9. They all live in London.
10. They all play football.
11. They are all students.
12. They all live in London.
13. They all play football.
14. They are all students.
15. They all live in London.
still  yet  already

**still**

*an hour ago*  

An hour ago it was raining.

*now*  

It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- 'Did you sell your car?'  'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Barcelona?'  'No, I live in Madrid now.'

**yet**

*20 minutes ago*  

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

*now*  

They are still waiting for Bill.  

Bill hasn't come yet.

yet = until now

We use **yet** in negative sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?).

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Emma?
  - B: She isn't here yet. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
  - B: I don't know yet. (= I will know later, but I don't know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?
  - B: Not yet. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
  - B: No, I'm still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't gone yet.  =  She's still here.  (not she is yet here)
- I haven't finished eating yet.  =  I'm still eating.

**already** = earlier than expected:

- 'What time is Joe coming?'  'He's already here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.'  'That's not necessary. I already know.'
- Sarah isn't coming to the cinema with us.  She has already seen the film.

already/yet + present perfect → Unit 16  
word order (still/already) → Unit 94
95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

**Tina - two years ago**

1. I play the piano.
2. I live in Clare Street.
3. I'm a student.
4. I've got a motorbike.
5. I go to the cinema a lot.
6. I want to be a teacher.

1. Do you still play the piano?
2. Do you...
3. Are...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>before</strong></th>
<th><strong>now</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>They were waiting for the bus.</td>
<td>They are still waiting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(before)</td>
<td>(still)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They have come yet.</td>
<td>They haven't come yet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(yet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>He was</td>
<td>He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(before)</td>
<td>(still)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>She</td>
<td>asleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(before)</td>
<td>(still)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>They</td>
<td>dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(before)</td>
<td>(still)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yet.</td>
<td>dinner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

95.3 Write questions with yet.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: _Are you ready yet?_ 

2. You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: _Helen_ 

3. Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: _You_ 

4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him: _He_ 

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.

1. What time is Joe coming? _He's already_ here.
2. Does Sarah want to see the film? _No, she_ has already seen it.
3. I have to see Julia before she goes. _It's too late. She_ 
4. Do you need a pen? _No, thanks. I_ one.
5. Shall I pay the bill? _No, it's OK. I_ 
After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody
- I gave the keys to Sarah.

give somebody something
- I gave Sarah the keys.

give something to somebody

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Something</th>
<th>To somebody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>that book</td>
<td>to me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these keys</td>
<td>to her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these flowers</td>
<td>to your mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my car</td>
<td>to a friend of mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a postcard</td>
<td>to Kate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>to us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

give somebody something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somebody</th>
<th>Something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>gave his mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lent Joe</td>
<td>some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much money did you lend him?</td>
<td>an email. Did you get it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I sent you</td>
<td>her holiday photos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicole showed us</td>
<td>the salt, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you pass me that book. It's mine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say ‘buy/get somebody something’:
- I bought my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

You can say:
- I gave the keys to Sarah.
- and I gave Sarah the keys.
  (but not I gave to Sarah the keys)
- That's my book. Can you give it to me?
- and Can you give me that book?
  (but not Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) with it or them:
- I gave it to her. (not I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give them to your father. (not Give your father them)
Exercises

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn’t want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning He gave ...

1 What did Mark do with the armchair? He gave it to his brother.
2 What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave it to Sarah.
3 What happened to the books? He gave them to Robert.
4 What about the lamp? He gave it to A Neighbour.
5 What did he do with the pictures? He gave them to His Brother.
6 And the ladder? He gave it to Gary.

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1 Paul
2 Joanna
3 Richard
4 Emma
5 Rachel
6 Kevin

1 I gave Paul a book.
2 I gave Joanna a plant.
3 I gave Richard a tennis racket.
4 I gave Emma a box of chocolates.
5 I gave Rachel flowers.
6 I gave Kevin a pen.

96.3 Write questions beginning Can you me ...? / Can you pass me ...? etc.

1 (you want the salt) (pass) Can you pass me the salt?
2 (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you lend me an umbrella?
3 (you want my address) (give) Can you give me your address?
4 (you need twenty pounds) (lend) Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5 (you want some information) (send) Can you send me some information?
6 (you want to see the letter) (show) Can you show me the letter?
7 (you want some stamps) (get) Can you get me some stamps?

96.4 Which is right?

1 I gave to Sarah the keys. / I gave to Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys is right)
2 I’ll lend you some money if you want. / I’ll lend you some money if you want.
3 Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5 Can you pass me the sugar please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6 This is Lisa’s bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.
We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

(sentence A) The car stopped. (sentence B) The driver got out.

The car stopped and the driver got out.

and/but/or

(sentence A) (sentence B)

We stayed at home and (we)* watched television.
My sister is married and (she)* lives in London.
He doesn’t like her, and she doesn’t like him.
I bought a newspaper, but I didn’t read it.
It’s a nice house, but it hasn’t got a garden.
Do you want to go out, or are you too tired?

* It is not necessary to repeat ‘we’ and ‘she’.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use and before the last thing:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.

- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

so (the result of something)

(sentence A) (sentence B)

It was very hot, so I opened the window.
Joe does a lot of sport, so he’s very fit.
They don’t like travelling, so they haven’t been to many places.

because (the reason for something)

(sentence A) (sentence B)

I opened the window because it was very hot.
Joe can’t come to the party because he’s going away.
Lisa is hungry because she didn’t have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:

- Because it was very hot, I opened the window.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.

- I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn’t like to live there because it’s too big.
97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I stayed at home.</th>
<th>I didn’t have your number.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I bought a newspaper.</td>
<td>Shall I wait here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I went to the window.</td>
<td>I didn’t read it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wanted to phone you.</td>
<td>I went by bus this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I jumped into the river.</td>
<td>I watched television.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually drive to work.</td>
<td>I swam to the other side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want me to come with you?</td>
<td>I looked out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I stayed at home and watched television.
2. I bought a newspaper, but I didn’t read it.

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.

1. It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2. They couldn’t play tennis.
3. They went to the museum.
4. Bill wasn’t hungry.
5. Helen was late.
6. Sue said.

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.

1. (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2. (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3. (but) I woke up early.
4. (and) I went to the park.
5. (so) I came back late.
6. (because) I was tired.
When ...  

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

- when I went out
- it was raining

You can say:

- When I went out, it was raining.
- It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if When ... is at the beginning:

- When you're tired, don't drive.
- Don't drive when you're tired.

- Helen was 25 when she got married.
- When Helen got married, she was 25.

We do the same in sentences with before/while/after:

- Always look both ways before you cross the road.
- Before you cross the road, always look both ways.

- While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
- It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.

- He never played football again after he broke his leg.
- After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico.
So they won’t see each other in New York.

Lisa will be in Mexico when Sarah is in New York.
The time is future (next week) but we say:

... when Sarah is in New York.
(not when Sarah will be)

We use the present (I am / I go etc.) with a future meaning after when:

- When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
  (not When I will get home)
- I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after before/while/after/until:

- Please close the window before you go out. (not before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our flat while we are away. (not while we will be)
- I’ll wait here until you come back. (not until you will come back)
98.1 Write sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When +</th>
<th>+</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I went out</td>
<td>I turned off the TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired</td>
<td>I always go to the same place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I phoned her</td>
<td>there were no rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go on holiday</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the programme ended</td>
<td>there was no answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got to the hotel</td>
<td>I like to watch TV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When I went out, it was raining.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>somebody broke into the house</th>
<th>before they came here</th>
<th>when they heard the news</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>before they crossed the road</td>
<td>while they were away</td>
<td>they didn't believe me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they went to live in New Zealand</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2. They were very surprised before they came here.
3. After they got married, while they were away.
4. Their house was damaged in a storm when they heard the news.
5. Where did they live? they didn't believe me.
6. While we were asleep, they didn't believe me.
7. When I told them what happened, they didn't believe me.

98.3 Which is right?

1. I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. (I'll stay and you come are right)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9. 'I need your address.' 'OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.'
10. I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before you go out?
2. What are you going to do when you have enough money?
3. When I start my new job, I'll wait for you while.
4. Will you be here when you go out?
If we go ... If you see ... etc.

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

- If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
- If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
- If you’re hungry, have something to eat.
- If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

If in the middle

- It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
- You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry.
- I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
- Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

- ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can get a ticket.’

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (not will). We say ‘if you see ...’ (not if you will see):

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not if I will be)
- What shall we do if it rains? (not if it will rain)
- If I don’t feel well tomorrow, I’ll stay at home.

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I’m not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. If I go out, I’ll close the windows.

When I go out = I’m going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I’ll close the windows.

Compare when and if:

- When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
- If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not When I’m late)
- We’re going to play tennis if it doesn’t rain. (not when it doesn’t rain)
99.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

**If**

- you don't hurry
- you pass the exam
- you fail the exam
- you don't want this magazine
- you want those pictures
- you're busy now
- you're hungry now
- you need money

**+**

- we can have lunch now
- you can have them
- I can lend you some
- you'll get a certificate
- you'll be late
- I'll throw it away
- we can talk later
- you can do it again

1. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2. If you pass
3. If
4. If
5. If
6. If
7. If
8. If

99.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. (I'm is right)
2. Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
3. I don't want to disturb you if
4. If you go to bed early tonight,
5. Turn the television off if
6. Tina won't pass her exams if
7. If I have time tomorrow,
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if
9. I'll be surprised if

99.4 Write if or when.

1. If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. I go, will you come with me?
4. you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Is it OK I close the window?
6. John is still at school be leaves school, he wants to go to college.
7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?
8. We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay -- we hope to find a hotel we get there. I don't know what we'll do we don't find a room.
If I had ... If we went ... etc.

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn’t have one. He doesn’t have enough money.

If he had the money, he would buy a fast car.

Usually had is past, but in this sentence had is not past. If he had the money = if he had the money now (but he doesn’t have it).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If</th>
<th>had / knew / lived / went (etc.) ...</th>
<th>I you it they etc.</th>
<th>would(n’t)</th>
<th>buy ...</th>
<th>be ...</th>
<th>have ...</th>
<th>could(n’t)</th>
<th>go ... etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>didn’t have / didn’t know (etc.) ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>could ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say:

- If he had the money, he would buy a car.
  or He would buy a car if he had the money.

I’d / she’d / they’d etc. = I would / she would / they would etc.:

- I don’t know the answer. If I knew the answer, I’d tell you.
- It’s raining, so we’re not going out. We’d get wet if we went out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn’t be happy if she lived in the country.
- If you didn’t have a job, what would you do? (but you have a job)
- I’m sorry I can’t help you. I’d help you if I could. (but I can’t)
- If we had a car, we could travel more. (but we haven’t got a car, so we can’t travel much)

If (I) was/were ...

You can say ‘if I/he/she/it was’ or ‘if I/he/she/it were’:

- It’s not a very nice place. I wouldn’t go there if I were you. (or ... if I was you)
- It would be nice if the weather was better.
  (or ... if the weather were better)
- What would Tom do if he were here?
  (or ... if he were here)

Compare:

if I have / if it is etc.

- I must go and see Helen.
  If I have time, I will go today.
  (= maybe I’ll have time, so maybe I’ll go)
- I like that jacket.
  I’ll buy it if it isn’t too expensive.
  (= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- I’ll help you if I can. (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it was etc.

- I must go and see Helen.
  If I had time, I would go today.
  (= I don’t have time today, so I will not go)
- I like that jacket, but it’s very expensive.
  I’d buy it if it wasn’t so expensive.
  (= it is expensive, so I’m not going to buy it)
- I’d help you if I could, but I can’t.
100.1 Complete the sentences.

1. I don't know the answer. If I ______ the answer, I'd tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I ______ a car.
3. I don't want to go out. If I ______, I'd go.
4. We haven't got a key. If we ______ a key, we could get into the house.
5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I ______
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she ______ it.
7. He can't speak any foreign languages. If he ______, perhaps he would get a better job.
8. You don't try hard enough. If you ______ harder, you would have more success.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I ______ so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1. If ______ the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2. Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn't be happy if she ______ in the country. (she/not/be)
3. If I wanted to learn Italian, ______ to Italy. (I/go)
4. I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if ______ . (she/know)
5. If ______ a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6. What would you do if ______ a lot of money? (you/win)
7. It's not a very good hotel. ______ there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
8. If ______ nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9. It's a pity you have to go now. ______ nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10. I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if ______ better.
   (the salary/be)
11. I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, ______ what to do. (I/not/know)
12. If you could change one thing in the world, what ______? (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house  it (be) a bit cheaper  I (watch) it
we (buy) a bigger house  every day (be) the same  I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall  the air (be) cleaner

1. I'd buy that jacket if ______
   it was a bit cheaper.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight, ______
3. This room would be nicer if ______
4. If there wasn't so much traffic, ______
5. Life would be boring if ______
6. If I had nothing to do, ______
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if ______
8. If we had more money, ______

100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1. I'd be happier if ______
2. If I could go anywhere in the world, ______
3. I wouldn't be very happy if ______
4. I'd buy ______ if ______
5. If I saw an accident in the street, ______
6. The world would be a better place if ______
a person who ... a thing that/which ...
(relative clauses 1)

who is for people (not things):

A thief is a person
Do you know anybody
The man
The people
who steals things.
who can play the piano?
who phoned
who work in the office
didn’t give his name.
are very friendly.

that is for things or people:

An aeroplane is a machine
Emma lives in a house
The people
that flies.
that is 400 years old.
that work in the office
are very friendly.

You can use that for people, but who is more usual.

which is for things (not people):

An aeroplane is a machine
Emma lives in a house
which flies. (not a machine who ...)
which is 400 years old.

Do not use which for people:

☐ Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party?
(not the woman which ...)

who and which in questions → Units 45, 47  the people we met (relative clauses 2) → Unit 102
101.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A ... is a person who ... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a thief</th>
<th>a butcher</th>
<th>a dentist</th>
<th>a musician</th>
<th>a patient</th>
<th>a liar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a fool</td>
<td>doesn't tell the truth</td>
<td>is very intelligent</td>
<td>takes care of your teeth</td>
<td>steals things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>is ill in hospital</td>
<td>plays a musical instrument</td>
<td>sells meat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. A butcher is a person.
3. A musician...
4. A patient...
5. A liar...

101.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who phoned didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman...
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students...
4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The...

101.3 Write who or which.

1. I met a woman who can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the man who has just started work in your office?
3. What's the name of the river which flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture which was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody who wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions which are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend who is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody who went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9. Why does he always wear clothes which are too small for him?

101.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person who steals things. **OK**
2. An aeroplane is a machine that flies. OK
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. **Wrong**
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table? **Wrong**
5. I don't like people who never stop talking. **Wrong**
6. I know somebody that can help you. **Wrong**
7. I know somebody who works in that shop. **Wrong**
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong. **Wrong**
9. My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000. **Wrong**
the people we met
the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

The man is carrying a bag.
It's very heavy.

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.

Kate won some money.
What is she going to do with it?

What is Kate going to do with the money (that) she won?

You can say:
- The bag that he is carrying ...
or The bag he is carrying ...
with or without that
- ... the money that Kate won? or ... the money Kate won?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>a bag</td>
<td>the bag (that) the man was carrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>some money</td>
<td>the money (that) Kate won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>some books</td>
<td>the books (that) you wanted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>some people</td>
<td>the people (who) we met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Did you find the books you wanted? (or ... the books that you wanted?)
- The people we met were very friendly. (or The people who we met ...)
- Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said ...)

We say:
- The film we saw was very good. (not The film we saw it was ...)

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking to a man.
We stayed at a hotel.
I told you about some books.

Do you know the man Eve is talking to?
The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
These are the books I told you about.

We say:
- ... the books I told you about. (not the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) where ...
- The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (→ Unit 101):
- I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that is the subject)

a person who ... a thing that/which ...

(relative clauses 1) → Unit 101
102.1 Make one sentence from two.

1. (Helen took some photographs. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the photographs Helen took?

2. (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
   I've lost the ____________

3. (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the ____________

4. (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the ____________?

5. (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
   I ____________

6. (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How ____________?

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2. (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The ____________

3. (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes ____________

4. (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The ____________

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1. Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
   What's the name of ____________?

2. Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
   Who are the people ____________?

3. Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
   Did you find the ____________?

4. Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
   Where is the ____________?

5. Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
   What's the name of ____________?

6. Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
   What's that ____________?

7. Your friend was waiting for a letter. You ask:
   Did you get ____________?

102.4 Complete the questions. Use where.

1. John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like ____________?

2. Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of ____________?

3. Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
   How big is the ____________?

4. Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   Where exactly is ____________?
at 8 o'clock  on Monday  in April

at 8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.

on Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.

in April/June etc. 2003/1968 etc. summer/spring etc.

We say:

at the weekend  at night
at Christmas / at Easter at the end of ...
at the moment

are you going away at the weekend?
I can't sleep at night.
Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
I'm going on holiday at the end of October.
Are you busy at the moment?

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening
I always feel good in the morning.
Do you often go out in the evening?

but

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.: 
I'm meeting Joanne on Monday morning.
Are you doing anything on Saturday night?

We do not use at/on/in before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.)
last ... (last August / last week etc.)
ext ... (next Monday / next week etc.)
every ... (every day / every week etc.)

Are you going out this evening?
We go on holiday every summer. Last summer we went to Canada.
I'm leaving next Monday.
(not on next Monday)

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes. (= it leaves five minutes from now)
Bye! I'll see you in a few days. (= a few days from now)
103.1 Write at/on/in.
1. 6 June 7. 24 September 13. Friday morning
2. the evening 8. Thursday 14. Saturday night
3. half past two 9. 11.45 15. night
4. Wednesday 10. Christmas Day 16. the end of the day
5. 1997 11. Christmas 17. the weekend
6. September 12. the morning 18. winter

103.2 Write at/on/in.
1. Bye! See you on Friday.
2. Where were you on 28 February?
3. I got up at 8 o'clock this morning.
4. I like getting up early in the morning.
5. My sister got married in May.
7. Did you go out on Tuesday?
8. Did you go out on Tuesday evening?
9. Do you often go out on the evening?
10. Let's meet at 7.30 tomorrow evening.

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.

1. Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening.
2. She has to phone Chris on Wednesday evening.
3. She isn't doing anything special.
4. She's got a driving lesson on Thursday.
5. She's going to a party on Friday.
6. She's meeting Sam on Saturday.

103.4 Write sentences with in ... .
1. It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30.
2. It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.
3. Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.
4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.

103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1. I'm going on Friday.
2. I'm going next Friday. (already complete)
3. I always feel tired this evening.
4. Will you be at home this evening?
5. We went to France last summer.
6. Laura was born in 1990.
7. What are you doing the weekend?
8. I phone Robert every Sunday.
9. Shall we play tennis next Sunday?
10. I can't go to the party Sunday.
11. I'm going out. I'll be back an hour.
12. I don't often go out night.
from ... to

- We lived in Japan from 1992 to 2001.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from ... until ...
- We lived in Japan from 1992 until 2001.

until ...

- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book until 3 o'clock.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):
- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:
- 'How long will you be away?'  'Until Monday.'
- 'When are you coming back?'  'On Monday.'

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done etc.):

- Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married since 1968. (= from 1968 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

Compare:
- We lived in Japan from 1992 to 2001.
  We lived in Japan until 2001.
- Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada in 2001.
  We have lived in Canada since 2001. (= from 2001 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.):
- Joe has been in hospital for three days. (not since three days)

for + a period of time

- Gary stayed with us for three days.
- I'm going away for a few weeks.
- I'm going away for the weekend.
- They've been married for ten years.
Exercises

104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.

**ALEX**
- I live in England now.
- I lived in Canada before.
- I came to England in 1999.

**KAREN**
- I live in Switzerland now.
- I lived in France before.
- I came to Switzerland in 2003.

**CLARE**
- I work in a restaurant now.
- I worked in a hotel before.
- I started work in the restaurant in 2001.

**ADAM**
- I'm a journalist now.
- I was a teacher before.
- I started work as a journalist in 1998.

3. (Alex / England / 1999) Alex has lived in England ...
4. (Karen / France / 2003) Karen lived in ...
5. (Karen / Switzerland / 2003) Karen has lived in ...
6. (Clare / a hotel / 1998–2001) Clare worked ...
7. (Clare / a restaurant / 2001) Clare has worked ...
8. (Adam / a teacher / 1992–1998) Adam was a ...
9. (Adam / a journalist / 1998) Adam has been ...

**Now write sentences with for.**

10. (Alex / Canada) Alex has lived in Canada for eight years.
11. (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England ...
12. (Karen / Switzerland) Karen has ...
13. (Clare / a hotel) Clare worked ...
14. (Clare / a restaurant) Clare ...
15. (Adam / a teacher) Adam ...
16. (Adam / a journalist) Adam ...

104.2 Write until/since/for.

1. Sue and Dave have been married since 1968.
2. I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed until 10 o’clock.
3. We waited for Sue half an hour, but she didn’t come.
4. ‘Have you just arrived?’ ‘No, I’ve been here half past seven.’
5. ‘How long did you stay at the party last night?’ ‘Until midnight.’
6. Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
7. I’m tired. I’m going to lie down a few minutes.
8. Don’t open the door of the train until the train stops.
9. This is my house. I’ve lived here I was seven years old.
10. Jack has gone away. He’ll be away Wednesday.
11. Next week I’m going to Paris three days.
12. I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work six.
13. ‘How long have you known Anna?’ ‘Since we were at school together.’
14. Where have you been? I’ve been waiting for you twenty minutes.
Everybody feels nervous **before** exams.

I fell asleep **during** the film.

We were tired **after** our visit to the museum.

Don't forget to close the window **before** you go out.

I often fall asleep **while** I'm reading.

They went home **after** they did the shopping.

We use **during** + noun (during the film). We use **while** + verb (while I'm reading):

- We didn't speak **during** the meal.
- We didn't speak **while** we were eating. (**not** during we were eating)

Use **for** (not during) + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year etc.):

- We played tennis **for** two hours. (**not** during two hours)
- I lived in London **for** a year. (**not** during a year)

You can use **before/after** + -ing (before going / after eating etc.):

- I always have breakfast **before** going to work. (≠ before I go to work)
- **After** doing the shopping, they went home. (≠ after they did)

Remember we say **before** going (**not** before to go), **after** doing (**not** after to do) etc.:

- **Before** eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (**not** before to eat)
- I started work **after** reading the newspaper. (**not** after to read)
Exercises

### 105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

| after | during | + | lunch | the end | they went to Australia |
|------|--------|+|------|--------|------------------------|
| before | while | | the concert | the exam | you’re waiting |

1. Everybody was nervous **before the exam**
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours **after lunch**
3. The film was really boring. We left **during the night**
4. Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot **after the course**
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London **before the end**

A: Somebody broke a window. **Did you hear anything?**
B: No, I was asleep all the time.

7. Would you like to sit down **while you’re waiting**?
8. ‘Are you going home?’ **Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.**

### 105.2 Write **during/while/**for.

1. We didn’t speak **while** we were eating.
2. We didn’t speak **during** the meal.
3. Gary called **while** you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome **for** five days.
5. Sally didn’t read any newspapers **while** she was on holiday.
6. The students looked very bored **during** the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed **while** I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV **for** three hours.
9. I don’t usually watch TV **while** the day.
10. **Do you ever watch TV** **while you are having dinner?**

### 105.3 Complete the sentences. Use **-ing (doing, having etc.).**

1. After **doing** the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after **eating** too much chocolate.
3. I’m going to ask you a question. Think carefully before **asking** it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after **taking** a shower.
5. After **finishing** my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before **leaving** to a foreign country, you should try and learn a little of the language.

### 105.4 Write sentences with **before + -ing and after + -ing.**

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home.
   **After doing the shopping, they went home.**
2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
   **John worked after leaving school.**
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   **Before leaving, I read for a few minutes.**
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   **After walking for three hours,**
5. Let’s have a cup of coffee. Then we’ll go out.
   **Let’s have coffee after finishing our work.**
in

- in a room
- in a shop
- in a cat
- in the water
- in a garden
- in a town
- in the city centre
- in Brazil

□ ‘Where’s David?’ ‘In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.’
□ What’s in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
□ Rachel works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
□ I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the sea.
□ Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.
□ I live in a big city, but I’d like to live in the country.

at

- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the traffic lights
- at her desk
- at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of...):
  - There’s somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
  - The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
  - Jane is working at her desk.
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - My house is at the end of the street.

on

- on a shelf
- on a plate
- on a balcony
- on the floor etc.
- on a wall
- on a door
- on the ceiling etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don’t sit on the grass. It’s wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:
- Who is that man on the motorbike?

the top / the bottom etc. ♦ Unit 70 ♦ at/on/in (time) ♦ Unit 103 ♦ in/at/on (places 2) ♦ Unit 107
106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. Where is he? in the kitchen.
2. Where are the shoes?
3. Where is the pen?
4. Where is the clock?
5. Where is the bus?
6. Where are the horses?
7. Where are they standing?
8. Where is she swimming?
9. Where is he standing?
10. Where is the spider?
11. Where is he sitting?
12. Where is she sitting?

106.2 Write in/at/on.

1. Don’t sit on the grass. It’s wet.
2. What have you got in your bag?
3. Look! There’s a man on the roof. What’s he doing?
4. There are a lot of fish in this river.
5. Our house is number 45 – the number is the door.
6. ‘Is the post office near here?’ ‘Yes, turn left at the traffic lights.’
7. It’s difficult to park in the centre of town. It’s better to take the bus.
8. My sister lives in Brussels.
9. There’s a small park at the top of the hill.
10. I think I heard the doorbell. There’s somebody at the door.
11. Munich is a large city in the south of Germany.
12. There are a few shops at the end of the street.
13. It’s difficult to carry a lot of things on a bicycle.
14. I looked at the list of names. My name was at the bottom.
15. There is a mirror on the wall in the living room.
in
- in bed
- in hospital
- in the sky
- in the world
- in a newspaper / in a book
- in a photograph / in a picture
- in a car / in a taxi
- in the middle (of...)

at
- at home
- at work / at school
- at university / at college
- at the station / at the airport
- at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.
- at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.

on
- on a bus
- on the first floor
- on the way from A to B

Often it is possible to use in or at for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):
- We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.

- Will you be at home this evening?
- 'Where's Kate?' 'She's at work.'
- Helen is studying law at university.
- I'll meet you at the station, OK?
- A: Where were you yesterday? B: At my sister's.
- I saw Tom at the doctor's.
- There weren't many people at the party.
Exercises

Unit 107

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. Where is she? ____________
2. Where are they? ____________
3. Where is he? ____________
4. Where are they? ____________
5. Where are the stars? ____________
6. Where are they? ____________
7. Where is Steve? ____________
8. Where is the restaurant? ____________
9. Where is she? ____________
10. Where are they? ____________
11. Where are they? ____________
12. Where are they? ____________

107.2 Write in/at/on.

1. Helen is studying law ______ at ______ university.
2. There was a big table _______ the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river _______ the world?
4. Were there many people ______ the concert last night?
5. Will you be ______ home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man ______ this photograph? Do you know him?
7. Where are your children? Are they ______ school?
8. Gary is coming by train. I’m going to meet him _______ the station.
9. Charlie is _______ hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there ______ this book?
11. ‘Are you hungry after your journey?’ ‘No, I had something to eat _______ the train.’
12. I’m sorry I’m late. My car broke down _______ the way here.
13. ‘Is Tom here?’ ‘No, he’s _______ his brother’s.’
14. Don’t believe everything you see _______ the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home _______ the bus.
A

**to**
go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...

- We're going to London on Sunday.
- I want to go to Italy next year.
- We walked from my house to the centre of town.
- What time do you go to bed?

**in/at** → Units 106–107

be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...

- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The main shops are in the centre of town.
- I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...

- The bus is at the airport.
- Sarah wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met a lot of people at the party.
- Helen stayed at her brother's house.

B

**home**
go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to):
- I'm tired. I'm going home.
  (not to home)
- Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:
- I'm staying at home tonight.
- Dan doesn't go to an office. He works at home.

C

**arrive and get**

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):
- They arrived in England last week. (not arrived to England)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):
- What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):
- What time did you get to the hotel?
- What time did you get to Paris?

got home / arrived home (no preposition):
- I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.
Exercises

Unit 108

108.1 Write to or in.

1 I like reading _______ bed.
2 We’re going _______ Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday _______ Italy at the moment.
4 I have to go _______ the bank today.
5 I was tired, so I stayed _______ bed late.
6 What time do you usually go _______ bed?
7 Does this bus go _______ the centre?
8 Would you like to live _______ another country?

108.2 Write to or at if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Paula didn’t go _______ work yesterday.
2 I’m tired. I’m going _______ home. (already complete)
3 Tina is not very well. She has gone _______ the doctor.
4 Would you like to come _______ a party on Saturday?
5 ‘Is Liz _______ home?’ ‘No, she’s gone _______ work.’
6 There were 20,000 people _______ the football match.
7 Why did you go _______ home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam _______ the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting _______ the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal _______ a restaurant, and then we went back _______ the hotel.

108.3 Write to, at or in if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I’m not going out this afternoon. I’m staying _______ home.
2 We’re going _______ a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went _______ New York last year.
4 How long did you stay _______ New York?
5 Next year we hope to go _______ Canada to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go _______ the cinema this evening?
7 Did you park your car _______ the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken _______ hospital.
9 How often do you go _______ the dentist?
10 ‘Is Sarah here?’ ‘No, she’s _______ Helen’s.’
11 My house is _______ the end of the street on the left.
12 I went _______ Maria’s house, but she wasn’t _______ home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk _______ home.
14 ‘Who did you meet _______ the party?’ ‘I didn’t go _______ the party.’

108.4 Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 What time do you usually get _______ work?
2 What time do you usually get _______ home?
3 What time did you arrive _______ London?
4 When did you arrive _______ London?
5 What time does the train get _______ Paris?
6 We arrived _______ home very late.

108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.

1 At three o’clock this morning I was _______ bed.
2 Yesterday I went _______ Maria’s house, but she wasn’t _______ home.
3 At 11 o’clock yesterday morning I was _______ the party.
4 One day I’d like to go _______ the party.
5 I don’t like going _______ the party.
6 At 9 o’clock yesterday evening I was _______ the party.
under, behind, opposite etc.

next to / beside / between / in front of / behind

- A is next to B. or A is beside B.
- B is between A and C.
- D is in front of B.
- E is behind B.

also
- A is on the left.
- C is on the right.
- B is in the middle (of the group).

opposite / in front of

- A is sitting in front of B.
- A is sitting opposite C.
- C is sitting opposite A.

by (= next to / beside)

- Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)
- Who is that man standing by the window?
- If you feel cold, why don’t you sit by the fire?

by the window

under

- The cat is under the table.
- The girl is standing under a tree.
- I’m wearing a jacket under my coat.

under the table  under a tree

above and below

- A is above the line. (= higher than the line)
- B is below the line. (= lower than the line)

The pictures are above the shelves.
The shelves are below the pictures.
109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

1. Colin is standing behind Frank.
2. Frank is sitting beside Emma.
3. Emma is sitting beside Barbara.
4. Emma is sitting beside Donna and Frank.
5. Donna is sitting beside Emma.
6. Frank is sitting beside Colin.
7. Alan is standing beside Donna.
8. Alan is standing left.
9. Barbara is standing middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The cat is under the table.
2. There is a big tree in front of the house.
3. The plane is flying in the clouds.
4. She is standing next to the piano.
5. The cinema is between the right.
6. She's sitting beside the phone.
7. The switch is in front of the window.
8. The cupboard is in front of the sink.
9. There are some shoes under the bed.
10. The plant is in front of the piano.
11. Paul is sitting beside Fiona.
12. In Britain people drive in front of the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.

1. (next to) The bank is next to the bookshop.
2. (in front of) The supermarket is in front of the theatre.
3. (opposite) The bookshop is opposite the supermarket.
4. (next to) The theatre is next to the supermarket.
5. (above) The bookshop is above the fountain.
6. (between) The bookshop is between the supermarket and the theatre.
up, over, through etc.

- Jane is going to France next week.
- We walked from the hotel to the station.
- A lot of English words come from Latin.

- We jumped into the water.
- A man came out of the house and got into a car.
- Why are you looking out of the window?
- I took the old batteries out of the radio.

We say put something in ... (not usually into):
- I put new batteries in the radio.

- Don't put your feet on the table.
- Please take your feet off the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall off your bicycle.
- We got on the bus in Princes Street.

- We walked up the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs.

- The plane flew over the mountains.
- I jumped over the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.

- A bird flew into the room through a window.
- The old road goes through the village.
- The new road goes round the village.
- The bus stop is just round the corner.
- I walked round the town and took some photographs.

You can also use around (= round):
- We walked around the town.

- I was walking along the road with my dog.
- Lets go for a walk along the river.
- The dog swam across the river.

- They walked past me without speaking.
  - A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  - B: Go along this road, past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.
Exercises

110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go ...

110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The dog swam across the river.
2. A book fell from the shelf.
3. A plane flew into the village.
4. A woman got into the car.
5. A girl ran across the road.
6. Suddenly a car came into the corner.
7. They drove into the village.
8. They got onto the train.
9. The moon travels around the earth.
10. They got into the house through a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into etc.

1. I looked over the window and watched the people in the street.
2. "My house is very near here. It's just over the corner.
3. ‘Where’s my phone?’ ‘You put it over your bag.’
4. How far is it from here to the airport?
5. We walked from the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat over the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball into the net.
8. Silvia took a key from her bag and opened the door.
### on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on holiday</td>
<td>Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on television</td>
<td>We watched the news on television.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the radio</td>
<td>We listened to the news on the radio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on fire</td>
<td>The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on time (= not late)</td>
<td>'Was the train late?' 'No, it was on time.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres per hour / at 100 degrees etc.

- Lisa got married at 21. (or ... at the age of 21.)
- A car uses more petrol at 120 kilometres per hour than at 90.
- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

### by

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.</td>
<td>Do you like travelling by train?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.</td>
<td>Jane usually goes to work by bike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but on foot:</td>
<td>You can't get there by car. You have to go on foot. (= you have to walk)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.</td>
<td>Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.</td>
<td>Who is that painting by? Picasso?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### with / without

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

### a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.

- Do you know that man with the beard?
- I'd like to have a house with a big garden.

### about

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...</td>
<td>Some people talk about their work all the time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...</td>
<td>I don't know much about cars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) about ...</td>
<td>There was a programme about volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>We heard the news</td>
<td>Please don't be late. Try to be here</td>
<td>I won't be here next week. I'm going</td>
<td>'Did you see Linda?'</td>
<td>'What's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the phone</td>
<td>on the radio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>this evening'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'Nothing that I want to watch.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with at/by/with etc.

1. I cut the paper ___ with ___ a pair of scissors.
2. She usually goes to work ___ car.
3. Who is the woman ___ short hair?
4. They are talking ___ the weather.
5. The car is ___ fire.
6. She's listening to some music ___ Mozart.
7. The plane is flying ___ 600 miles an hour.
8. They're ___ holiday.
9. Do you know the man ___ sunglasses?

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use at/by/with etc.

1. In tennis, you hit the ball ___ a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don't go out ___ a coat.
3. _Hamlet, Othello_ and _Macbeth_ are plays ___ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything ___ computers?
5. My grandmother died ___ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles ___ plane?
7. I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it ___ television.
8. My house is the one ___ the red door on the right.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel ___ very high speeds.
10. I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go ___ bike.
11. Can you give me some information ___ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested ___ two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They're nearly always ___ time.
14. What would you like to drink ___ your meal?
15. We travelled from Paris to Moscow ___ train.
16. The museum has some paintings ___ Rembrandt.
afraid of ..., good at ... etc.
of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)

- afraid of ...
- angry with somebody
- angry about something
- different from ...
  or different to ...
- fed up with ...
- full of ...
- good at ...
- interested in ...
- married to ...
- nice/kind of somebody to ...
  be nice/kind to somebody
- sorry about a situation
- sorry for/about doing something
- be/feel sorry for somebody

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you angry with me? What have I done?
- Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night)
- Lisa is very different from (or to) her sister.
- I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at maths?
- I'm not interested in sport.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- I'm sorry for/about not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
- I feel sorry for them. They are in a very difficult situation.

of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I'm not very good at</th>
<th>telling stories.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you fed up with</td>
<td>doing the same thing every day?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm sorry for</td>
<td>not phoning you yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you for</td>
<td>helping me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark is thinking of</td>
<td>buying a new car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom left without</td>
<td>saying goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>doing the shopping, they went home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in etc.

1. He's afraid ___________ dogs.
2. She's interested ___________ science.
3. She's married ___________ a footballer.
4. She's very good ___________ languages.
5. He's fed up ___________ the weather.
6. A: Can I help you?
   B: Thanks, that's very kind ___________ you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with in/of/with etc.

1. I'm not interested ___________ sport.
2. I'm not very good ___________ sport.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very kind ___________ me.
4. I'm sorry ___________ your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid ___________ anything.
6. It was very nice ___________ Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different ___________ life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested ___________ politics?
9. I feel sorry ___________ her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry ___________ what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full ___________ books.
12. I'm sorry ___________ getting angry ___________ you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very ___________ at telling stories. (good/tell)
2. I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't ___________ . (interested/go)
3. Sue isn't very ___________ up in the morning. (good/get)
4. Let's go! I'm ___________ . (fed up / wait)
5. I'm ___________ you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
6. Sorry I'm late! ___________ (thank you / wait)

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) ___________ without saying goodbye.
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
   Sue walked ___________.
3. (don't do anything / ask me first)
   Don't ___________.
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
   I ___________.

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (interested) ___________ I'm interested in sport.
2. (afraid) ___________ I'm ___________.
3. (not very good) ___________ I'm ___________.
4. (not interested) ___________.
5. (fed up) ___________.
| **Unit 113** | listen to ... , look at ...  etc.  
(verb + preposition) |
|---|---|
| **A** | **ask** (somebody) for ...
**belong to** ...
**happen to** ...
**listen to** ...
**speak/talk to** somebody about something
**thank** somebody for ...
**think about** ... or **think of** ...
**wait for** ...
**write to** somebody |
| **B** | **look at** / **look for** / **look after**
**look at** ...
(= **try to find**)
**look for** ...
(= **try to find**)
**look after** ...  
(= **take care of, keep safe**)
**depend** |
| **C** | We say **depend on** ...

- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?  
  B: Sometimes. **It depends on** the restaurant.  
  (not it depends of)

You can say it **depends what/where/how** (etc.) with or without **on**:
- A: Do you want to come out with us?  
  B: **It depends where** you're going.  
  or  
  **It depends on where** you're going. |

A: Do a man stopped me and **asked** me for money.  
B: Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)  
C: I can't find my pen. What's **happened to** it?  
D: **Listen to** this music. It's great.  
E: Did you **talk to** Paul about the problem?  
F: (on the phone) Can I **speak to** Chris, please?  
G: **Thank** you very much for your help.  
H: He never **thinks about** (or of) other people.  
I: Mark is **thinking of** (or about) buying a new computer.  
J: **Wait for** me. I'm nearly ready.  
K: I couldn't contact the company by phone. I had to write to them.  
L: I'm going to **phone** my parents this evening. (not phone to my parents)  
M: **He's looking at** his watch.  
N: **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.  
O: Why are you **looking at** me like that?  
P: She's lost her key. She's **looking for** it.  
Q: I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?  
R: **When Emily** is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her children.  
S: **Don't lose** this book. **Look after** it. (= Keep it safe.)
Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with to/for/at etc.

1 She’s looking at her watch. 4 Paul is talking to Jane.
2 He’s listening to the radio. 5 They’re looking at a picture.
3 They’re waiting for a taxi. 6 Sue is looking at Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with to/for/about etc. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Thank you very much for your help.
2 This isn’t my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
3 (on the phone) Can I speak to Steven Davis, please?
4 (on the phone) Thank you for calling. Goodbye.
5 What happened to Ella last night? Why didn’t she come to the party?
6 We’re thinking about going to Australia next year.
7 We asked the waiter to coffee, but he brought us tea.
8 ‘Do you like reading books?’ ‘It depends on the book.’
9 John was talking, but nobody was listening to what he was saying.
10 We waited for Karen until 2 o’clock, but she didn’t come.
11 If you want to contact me, you can write to me at this address.
12 Don’t forget to phone for your mother tonight.
13 He’s alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
14 ‘How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?’ ‘It depends on the type of room.’
15 Catherine is thinking about changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.

1 I looked at the newspaper, but I didn’t read it carefully.
2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.
3 Excuse me, I’m looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
4 Goodbye! Have a great holiday and look after yourself.
5 I want to take a photograph of you. Please look at the camera and smile.
6 Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with It depends...

1 Do you want to go out with us?
   It depends where you’re going.
2 Do you like eating in restaurants?
   It depends on the restaurant.
3 Do you enjoy watching TV?
   It depends.
4 Can you do something for me?
   It depends.
5 Are you going away this weekend?
5 Are you going away this weekend?
6 Can you lend me some money?
   It depends on how much you need.
go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Picture</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="GO IN" /></td>
<td>I waited outside the shop. I didn't go in.</td>
<td>Sarah opened the door of the car and got in. (= into the car)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="LOOK OUT" /></td>
<td>I went to the window and looked out.</td>
<td>The car stopped and a woman got out. (= out of the car)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="GET ON" /></td>
<td>The bus came, and I got on.</td>
<td>Be careful! Don't fall off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="STAND UP" /></td>
<td>He stood up and left the room.</td>
<td>I usually get up early. (= get out of bed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="FALL DOWN" /></td>
<td>The picture fell down.</td>
<td>Lie down on the floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="RUN AWAY" /></td>
<td>The thief ran away. (or ... ran off)</td>
<td>Emma got into the car and drove away. (or ... drove off)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="COME BACK" /></td>
<td>Go away and don't come back!</td>
<td>We went out for dinner and then went back to our hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="CLIMB OVER" /></td>
<td>The wall wasn't very high, so we climbed over.</td>
<td>Turn over and look at the next page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round (or around)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="LOOK ROUND" /></td>
<td>Somebody shouted my name, so I looked round (or around).</td>
<td>We went for a long walk. After an hour we turned round (or around) and went back.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tim is away. He'll be back on Monday.

get → Unit 56  put on / take off etc. (phrasal verbs 2) → Unit 115  more phrasal verbs → Appendix 6
114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up etc.

1. I went to the window and ________ out.
2. The door was open, so we ________.
3. He heard a plane, so he ________
4. She got on her bike and ________
5. I said hello, and he ________.
6. The bus stopped, and she ________
7. There was a free seat, so she ________
8. A car stopped, and two men ________

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

1. ‘What happened to the picture on the wall?’ ‘It fell ________.’
2. Wait a minute. Don’t go ________ I want to ask you something.
3. Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked ________ to see what it was.
4. I’m going ________ now to do some shopping. I’ll be ________ at 5 o’clock.
5. I’m feeling very tired. I’m going to lie ________ on the sofa.
6. When you have read this page, turn ________ and read the other side.
7. Mark is from Canada. He lives ________ London now, but he wants to go ________ to Canada.
8. We haven’t got a key to the house, so we can’t get ________.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn’t get ________.
10. A: ‘When are you going ________?’
    B: ‘On the 5th. And I’m coming ________ on the 24th.’

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250).

Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + on/off/up etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break fall give hold speak + on/off/up/down/over
carry get go slow take

1. I went to sleep at 10 o’clock and ________ at 8 o’clock the next morning.
2. ‘It’s time to go.’ ________, a minute. I’m not ready yet.’
3. The train ________ and finally stopped.
4. I like flying, but I’m always nervous when the plane ________.
5. How are your children? How are they ________ at school?
6. It’s difficult to hear you. Can you ________ a little?
7. This car isn’t very good. It has ________ many times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes ________.
9. The hotel isn’t far from here. If you ________, along this road, you’ll see it on the left.
10. I tried to find a job, but I ________ It was impossible.
11. The fire alarm ________ and everyone had to leave the building.
Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{verb} & \text{object} \\
\text{put on} & \text{your coat} \\
\text{take off} & \text{your shoes}
\end{array}
\]

You can say:
- put on your coat
- take off your shoes

But it/ them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:  
- put it on (not put on it)
- take it off (not take off them)

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{It was cold, so I put on my coat.} \\
\text{I'm going to take off my shoes.} \\
\text{Here's your coat. Put it on.} \\
\text{Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.}
\end{array}
\]

Some more phrasal verbs + object:

- **turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):
  - It was dark, so I turned on the light.
  - I don't want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.
  - Also switch on / switch off (lights, machines etc.):
    - I switched on the light and switched off the television.

- **pick up / put down**:
  - Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
  - I stopped reading and put my book down.

- **bring back / take back / give back / put back**:
  - You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back.
  - I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
  - I've got Rachel's keys. I have to give them back to her.
  - I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.
115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1. He turned on the light.
2. She switched off the lights.
3. He put on his jacket.
4. She took her glasses off.
5. He gave back the key.
6. We turned the lights off.

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

| 1 | I turned on the radio. | ['I turned the radio on.', 'I turned it on.'] |
| 2 | He put on his jacket. | [He put it on, He put on it] |
| 3 | She took her glasses off. | [She took her glasses off, She took them off] |
| 4 | I picked up the phone. | [I picked it up, I picked up it] |
| 5 | They gave back the key. | [They gave it back, They gave them back] |
| 6 | We turned the lights off. | [We turned it off, We turned them off] |

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with it or them.

verbs: bring back, pick up, switch off, take back, turn on

1. I wanted to watch something on television, so I turned it on.
2. My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to take it back to the shop.
3. There were some gloves on the floor, so I picked them up.
4. The heating was on but it was too warm, so I turned it down.
5. Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to give them back.

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251).
Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use it/them/me.

verbs: fill in, knock down, look up, show round, turn down, give up, knock over, put out, throw away, try on

1. They knocked down a lot of houses when they built the new road.
2. That music is very loud. Can you turn it down?
3. I knocked down a glass and broke it.
4. 'What does this word mean?' 'Here's a dictionary. You can look it up.'
5. I want to keep these magazines. Please don't knock them over.
6. I gave up a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them.
7. I visited a school last week. One of the teachers showed me round.
8. 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I gave up after a month.'
9. Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill it in.
10. Smoking isn't allowed here. Please put your cigarette out.
# Appendix 1

## Active and passive

### 1.1 Present and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present simple</strong></td>
<td>We make butter from milk.</td>
<td>Butter is made from milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody cleans these rooms every day.</td>
<td>These rooms are cleaned every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>People never invite me to parties.</td>
<td>I am never invited to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How do they make butter?</td>
<td>How is butter made?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past simple</strong></td>
<td>Somebody stole my car last week.</td>
<td>My car was stolen last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody stole my keys yesterday.</td>
<td>My keys were stolen yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They didn't invite me to the party.</td>
<td>I wasn't invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When did they build these houses?</td>
<td>When were these houses built?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present continuous</strong></td>
<td>They are building a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished)</td>
<td>A new airport is being built at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They are building some new houses near the river.</td>
<td>Some new houses are being built near the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past continuous</strong></td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)</td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present perfect</strong></td>
<td>Look! They have painted the door.</td>
<td>Look! The door has been painted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them.</td>
<td>These shirts are clean. They have been washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody has stolen my car.</td>
<td>My car has been stolen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past perfect</strong></td>
<td>Tina said that somebody had stolen her car.</td>
<td>Tina said that her car had been stolen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.2 will / can / must / have to etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody will clean the office tomorrow.</td>
<td>The office will be cleaned tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody must clean the office.</td>
<td>The office must be cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I think they'll invite you to the party.</td>
<td>I think you'll be invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They can't repair my watch.</td>
<td>My watch can't be repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You should wash this sweater by hand.</td>
<td>This sweater should be washed by hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They are going to build a new airport.</td>
<td>A new airport is going to be built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody has to build these clothes.</td>
<td>These clothes have to be washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They had to wash these clothes.</td>
<td>The injured man had to be taken to hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They had to take the injured man to hospital.</td>
<td>The injured man had to be taken to hospital.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 2
### List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/ware</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Simple / Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned or burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed or dreamt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned or learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelled or smelt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation
### Irregular verbs in groups

#### The past simple and past participle are the same:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### The past simple and past participle are different:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation
Appendix 4

Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it is</td>
<td>it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>they've</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm feeling tired this morning.
- 'Do you like this jacket?'  'Yes, it's nice.'
- 'Where are your friends?'  'They've gone home.'

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he's</td>
<td>she's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's</td>
<td>you've</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you've</td>
<td>she'll</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc. :

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>'s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>'re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>'ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>'s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td>'d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>'ll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>'d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = is or has:

- She's going out this evening. (she's going = she is going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

't'd = would or had:

- A: What would you like to eat?
- B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)

Do not use 'm/’s/’d etc. at the end of a sentence (⇒ Unit 40):

- 'Are you tired?'  'Yes, I am.'  (not Yes, I’m.)
- She isn’t tired, but he is. (not he’s)

4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- Who's your favourite singer?  (= who is)
- What's the time?  (= what is)
- There's a big tree in the garden.  (= there is)
- My sister's working in London.  (= my sister is working)
- Paul's gone out.  (= Paul has gone out)
- What colour's your car?  (= What colour is your car?)
Appendix 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isn't</td>
<td>isn't (= is not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren't</td>
<td>aren't (= are not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn't</td>
<td>wasn't (= was not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren't</td>
<td>weren't (= were not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn't</td>
<td>hasn't (= have not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadn't</td>
<td>hadn't (= had not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't</td>
<td>don't (= do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn't</td>
<td>doesn't (= does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn't</td>
<td>didn't (= did not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't</td>
<td>can't (= cannot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couldn't</td>
<td>couldn't (= could not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won't</td>
<td>won't (= will not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wouldn't</td>
<td>wouldn't (= would not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouldn't</td>
<td>shouldn't (= should not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustn't</td>
<td>mustn't (= must not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We went to her house, but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's David?'  'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

1. 's = is or has (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)
2. let's = let us (→ Units 35, 53)
   - It's a lovely day. Let's go out. (= Let us go out.)
3. Kate's camera = her camera
   - my brother's car = his car
   - the manager's office = his/her office etc.
   (→ Unit 64)

Compare:
- Kate's camera was very expensive. (Kate's camera = her camera)
- Kate's a very good photographer. (Kate's = Kate is)
- Kate's got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate has got)
### Appendix 5

#### Spelling

**5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun + s (plural)</th>
<th>Verb + s (he/she/it -s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bird → birds</td>
<td>think → thinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake → mistakes</td>
<td>live → lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotel → hotels</td>
<td>remember → remembers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**but**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bus → buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish → dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch → watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box → boxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**also**

| potato → potatoes           | tomato → tomatoes        |
| do → does                  | go → goes                |

**-f / -fe → -ves**

| shelf → shelves            | knife → knives            |
| but roof → roofs           |

**5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>study → studies (not studyed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story → stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try → tries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family → families (not familys)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city → cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry → marries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ied (→ Unit 11)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>study → studied (not studied)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try → tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry → married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy → copied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ier/-iest (→ Units 87, 90)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy → easier/easiest (not easier/easiest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy → happier/happiestest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy → heaviest/heaviestest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ily (→ Unit 86)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy → easily (not easily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy → happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy → heavily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luckily → luckily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:**

| holiday → holidays (not holidays) |
| enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed          |
| stay → stays/stayed             |
| buy → buys                      |
| key → keys                      |

**but**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>say → said</th>
<th>pay → paid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(irregular verbs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -ing:
make → making  write → writing  come → coming  dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
lie → lying  die → dying  tie → tying

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters: a e i o u
Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant. For example: stop, big, get.
Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, p/g/t etc. become pp/gg/tt etc.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+C</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>big</th>
<th>hot</th>
<th>thin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STO P</td>
<td>RUN</td>
<td>GET</td>
<td>SWIM</td>
<td>BIG</td>
<td>HOT</td>
<td>THIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>tt</td>
<td>mm</td>
<td>gg</td>
<td>tt</td>
<td>nn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V+C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This does not happen
(1) if the word ends in two consonant letters (C + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C+C</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>fast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HEL P</td>
<td>WOR K</td>
<td>FAS T</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helped</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>fastest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+V+C</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>wait</th>
<th>cheap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NED</td>
<td>WAT</td>
<td>CHAP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needing</td>
<td>waiting</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

stress

happen HAP-pen → happening/happened (not happened)
visit VIS-it → visiting/visited
remember re-MEM-ber → remembering/remembered

but

prefer pre-FER (stress at the end) → preferring/preferred
begin be-GIN (stress at the end) → beginning

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed  snow → snowing/snowed  few → fewer/fewest
Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

**on**
- **carry on** = *continue*
  - Don’t stop working. *Carry on* (= continue working)
  - A: Excuse me, where is the station?  
  - B: *Carry on* along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)
- *also go on / walk on / drive on etc.* = *continue going/walking/driving etc.*
  - Don’t stop here. *Drive on.*

- **come on** = *be quick*
  - *Come on!* Everybody is waiting for you.

- **get on** = *manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)*
  - How was your exam? How did you *get on*? (= how did you do?)

- **hold on** = *wait*
  - Can you *hold on* a minute? (= can you wait?)

**off**
- **take off** = *leave the ground (for planes)*
  - The plane *took off* 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.

- **go off** = *explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)*
  - A bomb *went off* and caused a lot of damage.
  - A car alarm *goes off* if somebody tries to break into the car.

**up**
- **give up** = *stop trying*
  - I know it’s difficult, but don’t *give up.* (= don’t stop trying)

- **grow up** = *become an adult*
  - What does your son want to do when he *grows up?*

- **hurry up** = *do something more quickly*
  - *Hurry up!* We haven’t got much time.

- **speak up** = *speak more loudly*
  - I can’t hear you. Can you *speak up,* please?

- **wake up** = *stop sleeping*
  - I often *wake up* in the middle of the night.

- **wash up** = *wash the plates etc. after a meal*
  - Do you want me to *wash up?* (or ... to do the washing-up?)

**down**
- **slow down** = *go more slowly*
  - You’re driving too fast. *Slow down!*

- **break down** = *stop working (for cars, machines etc.)*
  - Sue was very late because her car *broke down.*

**over**
- **fall over** = *lose your balance*
  - I *fell over* because my shoes were too big for me.
Appendix 7  Phrasal verbs + object

(put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

**in/out**  **fill in** / **fill out** a form = **complete a form**

- Can you **fill in this form**, please? or
- Can you **fill out this form**, please?

**out**  **put out** a fire, a cigarette etc.

- The fire brigade arrived and **put the fire out**.

**cross out** a mistake, a word etc.

- If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.

**on**  **try on** clothes = **put on clothes to see if they fit you**

- (in a shop) This is a nice jacket. **Shall I try it on?**

**up**  **give up** something = **stop doing it**

- Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- ‘Are you still learning Italian?’ ‘No, I **gave it up**.’

**look up** a word in a dictionary etc.

- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

**turn up** the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = **make it louder or warmer**

- Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

**wake up** somebody who is sleeping

- I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6.30?

**down**  **knock down** a building = **demolish it**

- They are going to **knock down** the school and build a new one.

**turn down** the TV, radio, music, heating etc.

= **make it more quiet or less warm**

- The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

**over**  **knock over** a cup, a glass, a person etc.

- Be careful. Don’t **knock your cup over**.
- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was **knocked over** by a car.
  (or A man was **knocked down** by a car.)

**away**  **throw away** rubbish, things you don’t want

- These apples are bad. **Shall I throw them away?**
- Don’t **throw away that picture**. I want it.

**put** something **away** = **put it in the place where you usually keep it**

- After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

**back**  **pay** somebody **back** = **give back money that you borrowed**

- Thank you for lending me the money. I’ll **pay you back** next week.

**round/around**  **show** somebody **round/around** = **take somebody on a tour of a place**

- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us round**.
### Additional exercises

**List of exercises:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1–2</th>
<th>am/is/are</th>
<th>Units 1–2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>Units 3–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>Units 5–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–7</td>
<td>present simple, am/is/are and have (got)</td>
<td>Units 1–2, 5–7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–9</td>
<td>present continuous and present simple</td>
<td>Units 3–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10–13</td>
<td>was/were and past simple</td>
<td>Units 10–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>past simple and past continuous</td>
<td>Units 11–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>present and past</td>
<td>Units 3–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16–18</td>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>Units 15–19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19–22</td>
<td>present perfect and past simple</td>
<td>Units 18–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>present, past and present perfect</td>
<td>Units 3–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24–27</td>
<td>passive</td>
<td>Units 21–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>Units 25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>past, present and future</td>
<td>Units 3–20, 25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–31</td>
<td>past, present and future</td>
<td>Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>-ing and to ...</td>
<td>Units 51–55, 105, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33–34</td>
<td>a and the</td>
<td>Units 65, 69–73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>prepositions</td>
<td>Units 103–108, 111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### am/is/are

**Units 1–2**

1. **Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + is/isn't/are/aren't.**

   ![Picture 1](image1.png)
   ![Picture 2](image2.png)
   ![Picture 3](image3.png)
   ![Picture 4](image4.png)
   ![Picture 5](image5.png)
   ![Picture 6](image6.png)
   ![Picture 7](image7.png)
   ![Picture 8](image8.png)

   - The windows
   - Lisa
   - Kate
   - The children
   - Gary
   - The books
   - The hotel
   - The bus
   - on the table
   - hungry
   - asleep
   - open
   - full
   - near the station
   - a doctor
   - happy

   1. **The windows are open.**
   2. **Lisa isn't happy.**
   3. **Kate**
   4. **Open**
   5. **Full**
   6. **Near the station**
   7. **A doctor**
   8. **Happy**
2 Complete the sentences.
1 'Are you hungry?' ‘No, but ________________ thirsty.’
2 ‘How are______________ your parents?’ ‘They’re fine.’
3 ‘Is Anna at home?’ ‘No, ______________________ at work.’
4 ‘________________________ my keys?’ ‘On your desk.’
5 Where is Paul from? ___________________________ American or British?
6 ‘Are you a teacher?’ ‘No, ______________________ a student.’
7 ‘Where’s your car?’ ___________________________ in the car park?
8 ‘Are you tired?’ ‘No, ________________ fine.’
9 ‘These shoes are nice. How ________________?’ ‘Fifty pounds.’

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.

1 A: Where are your parents?
B: ___________________________ (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Paula is going out.
B: ___________________________ (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where’s David?
B: ___________________________ (he / have / a shower)
4 A: ___________________________ ?
B: No, they’re asleep.
5 A: ___________________________ ?
B: No, not at the moment.
6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
B: ___________________________ (they / come / now)
7 A: ___________________________ ?
B: ___________________________ (why / you / stand / here?)
8 A: ___________________________ ?
B: ___________________________ (I / wait / for somebody)

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.

1 Sue always ________________ to work early.
2 We don’t ________________ TV very often.
3 How often do you ________________ your hair?
4 I want to go to the cinema, but ________________ to go.
5 ___________________________ to go out tonight?
6 ___________________________ near here?
7 ___________________________ a lot of people.
8 I enjoy travelling, but ___________________________ very much.
9 What time ___________________________ in the morning?
10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
11 ___________________________ very often.
12 A: What ________________ ?
B: ___________________________ in a hotel.
5 Read the questions and Clare's answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

1 Are you married? No. Clare: She isn't married.
2 Do you live in London? Yes. She lives in London.
3 Are you a student? Yes. She is a student.
4 Have you got a car? No. She doesn't have a car.
5 Do you go out a lot? Yes. She goes out a lot.
6 Have you got a lot of friends? Yes. She has a lot of friends.
7 Do you like London? Yes. She likes London.
8 Do you like dancing? Yes. She likes dancing.
9 Are you interested in sport? No. She isn't interested in sport.

6 Complete the questions.


7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1 Sarah often / tennis / She often plays tennis.
2 my parents / a new car / My parents have got a new car.
3 my shoes / dirty / My shoes are dirty.
4 Sonia / 32 years old / Sonia is 32 years old.
5 I / two sisters / I have two sisters.
6 we / often / TV in the evening / We often watch TV in the evening.
7 Jane never / a hat / Jane never wears a hat.
8 a bicycle / two wheels / A bicycle has two wheels.
9 these flowers / beautiful / These flowers are beautiful.
10 Mary / German / well / Mary speaks German very well.
Additional exercises

present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)  Units 3–8

8 Complete the sentences.

1. Please be quiet. I'm working (I work).
2. Do you often go (you/often/go) to the cinema?
3. What (you/cook)?
4. Jack (play) the piano very well.
5. (I/go) now. Goodbye!
6. (I/train). Can I take this umbrella?
7. (not/watch) TV very much.
8. Excuse me, (we/look) for the museum.
9. What's this word? How (you/pronounce) it?

9 Which is right?

1. 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' ‘Yes, a little.’ (Do you speak is right)
2. Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shiness.
4. (You meet Kate in the street.) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6. Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
7. I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. 'Where are Michael and Jane?' ‘They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.’
9. Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12. 'Would you like some tea?' ‘No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'
Additional exercises

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1. I got up early and _________ a shower.
2. Tom was tired last night, so he _____________ to bed early.
3. I _____________ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4. Kate got married when she _____________ 23.
5. Helen is learning to drive. She _____________ her first lesson yesterday.
6. ‘I’ve got a new job’ ‘Yes, I know. David _____________ me.’
7. ‘Where did you buy that book?’ ‘It was a present. Jane _____________ it to me.’
8. We _____________ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9. ‘Did you enjoy the film?’ ‘Yes, I _____________ it was very good.’
10. ‘Did Andy come to your party?’ ‘No, we _____________ him, but he didn’t come.’

11 Look at the questions and Kevin’s answers. Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.

When you were a child...
Did you like school?
Were you good at sport?
Did you play football?
Did you work hard at school?
Did you have a lot of friends?
Did you have a bicycle?
Were you a quiet child?

No. 1 He wasn’t tall.
Yes. 2 He liked school.
Yes. 3 He...
Yes. 4 He...
No. 5 He...
Yes. 6 He...
No. 7 He...
No. 8 He...

12 Complete the questions.

1. Did you have a nice holiday? _____________
2. Where did you go? _____________
3. Did you go to Amsterdam? _____________
4. How was it there? _____________
5. Did you enjoy the food? _____________
6. Where did you stay? _____________
7. Did you arrive back? _____________

Yes, it was great, thanks.
To Amsterdam.
Five days.
Yes, very much.
I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
Yes, it was warm and sunny.
Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1. It was a good party. _____________ it. (I / enjoy)
2. Did you do the shopping? (you / do) ‘No, I _____________ time.’ (I / have)
3. ‘Did you phone Adam?’ ‘No, I’m afraid _____________.’ (I / forget)
4. I like your new watch. Where _____________ it? (you / get)
5. I saw Lucy at the party, but _____________ to her. (I / speak)
6. A: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
   B: Yes, I _____________ to work. (he / go)
7. Paul wasn’t well yesterday, so _____________ five minutes ago. (she / arrive)
8. ‘Is Mary here?’ ‘Yes, _____________ before he moved here? (Robert / live)
9. The restaurant wasn’t expensive. _____________ very much. (the meal / cost)
Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

1. It **was raining** (rain) when we **went** (go) out.

2. When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul **were working** (work) at their desks.

3. I **opened** (open) the window because it was hot.

4. The phone **rang** (ring) when Sue **was cooking** (cook) the dinner.

5. I **heard** (hear) a noise outside, so I **looked** (look) out of the window.

6. Tom **looked** (look) out of the window when the accident **happened** (happen).

7. Richard had a book in his hand, but he **was not reading** (not/read) it. He **was watching** (watch) TV.

8. Catherine bought a magazine, but she **was not reading** (not/read) it. She didn’t have time.

9. I **finished** (finish) my meal, **paid** (pay) the bill and **left** (leave) the restaurant.

10. I **saw** (see) Kate this morning. I **walked** (walk) along the street and she **waited** (wait) for the bus.
present and past

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present simple (I work/drive etc.)</th>
<th>Present continuous (I am working/driving etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past simple (I worked/drove etc.)</td>
<td>Past continuous (I was working/driving etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 You can turn off the television. I'm not watching (not/watch) it.
2 Last night Jenny fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read).
3 Listen! Somebody is playing the piano.
4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I haven't given (give) it back to you.'
5 David is very lazy. He doesn't like (not/like) hard work.
6 Where (your parents / go) for their holidays last year?
7 I (see) Diane yesterday. She drove (drive) her new car.
8 A: (you/watch) television very much?
   B: No, I haven't got a television set.
9 A: What (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10 Andy isn't at home very much. He (go) away a lot.
11 I (try) to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult.
12 I'm tired this morning. I couldn't sleep (not/sleep) very well last night.

present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1 Goodbye, Tom!
   5 minutes later
   Is Tom at home?
   No, he's just gone out.

2 Who's that man?
   I don't know. I've never seen him before.

3 Are you still watching the film?
   No, I've just turned it off.

4 I'm looking for my glasses.
   Here they are! I've put them!
Additional exercises

5 miracle? I don't know. I it.

6 I'm looking for Julia. her? Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

7 More coffee? No, thanks. I enough.

8 to Sweden? Yes, I went there a few years ago.

9 Hi. We later to the cinema.

10 Enjoy the party! Where are Steve and Jane? to a party.

11 Paul was asleep in the armchair. He up.


13 Do you know Alan? Yes, we each other for a long time.

14 The weather is horrible here. It all day.
Additional exercises

17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).
1 Mark and Liz are married. They __________________________ married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV __________________________ 5 o’clock.
3 Martin is at work. He __________________________ at work since 8.30.
4 ‘Have you just arrived in London?’ ‘No, I’ve been here __________________________ five days.’
5 I’ve known Helen __________________________ we were at school together.
6 ‘My brother lives in Los Angeles.’ ‘Really? How long __________________________ there?’
7 George has had the same job __________________________ 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They __________________________ here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.
1 I’ve never __________________________
2 I’ve __________________________ many times.
3 I’ve just __________________________
4 I’ve __________________________ (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5 I haven’t __________________________ yet.
6 I’ve never __________________________
7 I’ve __________________________ since
8 I’ve __________________________ for __________________________

present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Units 18-20

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. I __________________________ there.
2 A: Have you seen Kate?
   B: Yes, I __________________________ her five minutes ago.
3 A: That’s a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I __________________________ it last week.
4 A: Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I __________________________ to bed late last night.
5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
   B: You can have it. I __________________________ it.
6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
   B: I __________________________ yet. My first day is next Monday.
7 A: The weather isn’t very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it __________________________ nice yesterday.
8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don’t think so. I __________________________ her there.
9 A: Is your son still at school?
   B: No, he __________________________ school two years ago.
10 A: Is Silvia married?
   B: Yes, she __________________________ married for five years.
11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
   B: Of course. He __________________________ the first President of the United States.
12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
   B: I don’t know. I __________________________ a pizza.
20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, I went there last year.

2 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. I've never been there.

3 A: What time is Paul going out?
   B: He's already gone.

4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, she left at 4 o'clock.

5 A: New York is my favourite city.
   B: Is it?

6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
   B: I don't know.

7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: It was on the table last night.

8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
   B: Yes.

9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they?

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When did you go there last time?
   B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long have you had it?
   B: It's new. I bought it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?
   B: In Harold Street.
   A: How long have you lived there?
   B: Five years. Before that I lived in Mill Road.
   A: How long have you lived in Mill Road?
   B: About three years.

4 A: What do you do?
   B: I work in a shop.
   A: How long have you been working there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What were you before that?
   B: I was a taxi driver.
Additional exercises

22 Write sentences about yourself.

1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night) I went to bed late.
3 (yesterday afternoon) I ate lunch at home.
4 (... days ago) I went on a vacation last week.
5 (last week) I visited my cousin last week.
6 (last year) I went on a vacation last year.

Present, past and present perfect

23 Which is right?

1 'Is Sue working? (C) 'No, she's on holiday.'
   A Does Sue work? B Is working Sue? C Is Sue working? D Does work Sue?

2 'Where?' 'In a village near London.'
   A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle

3 I speak Italian, but I don't speak French.
   A I speak not B I'm not speaking C I don't speak D I don't speak

4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's having a shower at the moment.'
   A He's having B He have C He has D He has had

5 Why angry with me yesterday?
   A were you B was you C you were D have you been

6 My favourite film is Cleo's Dream. I've seen it four times.
   A I'm seeing B I see C I was seeing D I've seen

7 I out last night. I was too tired.
   A don't go B didn't went C didn't go D haven't gone

8 Liz is from Chicago. She has lived there all her life.
   A is living B has lived C lives D lived

9 My friend for me when I arrived.
   A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting

10 'How long?' 'Six months.'
   A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning

11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there for three years.
   A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years

12 'What time?' 'About an hour ago.'
   A has Lisa phoned B Lisa has phoned C did Lisa phone D is Lisa phoning

13 What when you saw her?
   A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn D was wearing Sue

14 'Can you drive?' 'No, a car, but I want to learn.'
   A I never drive B I'm never driving C I've never driven D I was never driving

15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she didn't see me.
   A didn't see B don't see C hasn't seen D didn't saw
24 Complete the sentences.

1. These houses were built (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building was damaged (damage) in a fire and had to be knocked down (knock down).

2. This bridge was built (build) in 1955. It was used (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge is being painted (paint).

3. This street is called Wilton Street. It used to be called James Street, but the name was changed (change) a few years ago.

4. This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles are made (make) here since 1961. It’s the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles are produced (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1. We were invited (invite) to the party, but we didn’t go.
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it is visited (visit) by thousands of people.
3. Many buildings were damaged (damage) in the storm last week.
4. A new road is going to be built (build) next year.
5. ‘Where’s your jacket?’ ‘It was cleaned (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.’
6. She’s famous now, but in a few years her name will be forgotten (forget).
7. ‘Shall I do the washing-up?’ ‘No, it has already been done (do).’
8. Milk should be kept (keep) in a fridge.
9. You were ever bitten (bite) by a snake?
10. My bag was stolen (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1. Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
2. Somebody stole my car last week. My car was stolen.
3. Somebody wants you on the phone. You are wanted on the phone.
4. Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the bananas have been eaten.
5. Somebody will repair the machine. The machine will be repaired.
6. Somebody is watching us. We are being watched.
7. Somebody has to do the housework. The housework has to be done.
Additional exercises

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1 They __________ (build) a new airport at the moment.
2 These shirts are clean now. They __________ (wash).
3 'How did you fall?' 'Somebody __________ (push) me.'
4 'How did you fall?' 'I __________ (push).'
5 I can't find my bag. Somebody __________ (take) it!
6 My watch is broken. It __________ (repair) at the moment.
7 Who __________ (invent) the camera?
8 When __________ (wash) the camera/invent?
9 These shirts are clean now. I __________ (wash) them.
10 The letter was for me, so why __________ (they/send) it to you?
11 The information will __________ (send) to you as soon as possible.

28 Which is the best alternative?

1 We're having __________ a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A We have B We're having C We'll have

2 Do you know about Karen? __________ her job. She told me last week.
   A She leaves B She's going to leave C She'll leave

3 There's a programme on television that I want to watch. __________ in five minutes.
   A It starts B It's starting C It will start

4 The weather is nice now, but I think __________ later.
   A it rains B it's raining C it will rain

5 'What __________ next weekend?' 'Nothing. I've got no plans.'
   A do you do B are you doing C will you do

6 'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK, __________ her.'
   A I ask B I'm going to ask C I'll ask

7 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' __________ tea, please.'
   A I have B I'm going to have C I'll have

8 Don't take that newspaper away. __________ it.
   A I read B I'm going to read C I'll read

9 Rachel is ill, so __________ to the party tomorrow night.
   A she doesn't come B she isn't coming C she won't come

10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time __________ ?
    A does her train arrive B is her train going to arrive C is her train arriving

11 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No. __________ .'
    A I go out B I'm going out C I'll go out

12 __________ you tomorrow? 'Yes, OK.'
    A Do I phone B Am I going to phone C Shall I phone
Complete the sentences.

1. A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
   B: No, (I/stay) at home.
   A: What (you/do)?
   B: (I/watch) television.
   A: (you/go) out tomorrow night?
   B: Yes, (I/go) to the cinema.
   A: Which film (you/see)?
   B: (I/not/decide) yet.

2. A: Are you on holiday here?
   B: Yes, we are.
   A: How long (you/be) here?
   B: (we/arrive) yesterday.
   A: And how long (you/stay)?
   B: Until the end of next week.
   A: And (you/like) it here?
   B: Yes, (we/have) a wonderful time.

3. A: Oh, (I/just/remember) — (Karen/phone) while you were out.
   B: (she/always/phone) when I’m not here,
   (she/leave) a message?
   A: No, but (she/want) you to call her back as soon as possible.
   B: OK, (I/phone) her now.
   (you/look) her number?
   A: It’s in my address book. (I/get) it for you.

4. A: (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
   (you/want) to come with us?
   B: Yes, where (you/go)?
   A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. (you/ever/eat)
   there?
   B: Yes, (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I (go) there last night, but I’d love to go again!

5. A: (I/lose) my glasses again.
   (you/see) them?
   B: (you/wear) them
   when (I/come) in.
   A: Well, (I/not/wear) them now, so where are they?
   B: (you/look) in the kitchen?
   A: No, (I/go) and look now.
30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time
(1) ____________________________ (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary
school, and (2) ____________________________ (we/sit) next to each other
for the first lesson. (3) ____________________________ (we/not/know) any
other students in our class, and so (4) ____________________________ (we/become)
friends. We found that (5) ____________________________ (we/like) the same things,
especially music and sport, and so (6) ____________________________ (we/spend)
a lot of time together.

(7) ____________________________ (we/leave) school five years ago, but
(8) ____________________________ (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six
months Carolyn (9) ____________________________ (be) in Mexico – at the
moment (10) ____________________________ (she/work) in a school as a teaching
assistant, (11) ____________________________ (she/come) back to England next
month, and when (12) ____________________________ (she/come) back,
(13) ____________________________ (we/have) lots of things to talk about.
(14) ____________________________ (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick
and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mum and Dad
We're in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world
trip! (1) ____________________________ (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now
(2) ____________________________ (we/stay) at a hotel near the
airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) ____________________________
(we/enjoy) it. (4) ____________________________ (we/watch)
some films and (5) ____________________________ (sleep) a few hours,
which is unusual for me – usually (6) ____________________________ (I/not/sleep)
well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) ____________________________
(we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow
(8) ____________________________ (we/go) to Hollywood
(9) ____________________________ (see) the film studios.
(10) ____________________________ (we/not/decide) yet
what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) ____________________________
(want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer
(12) ____________________________ (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) ____________________________ (I/send)
you another email next week.

Love
Nick
Dear Nick
Thanks for your mail. It's good to hear that (14) (you/have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little tired – I think (17) (he/need) a good holiday.

Keep in touch!
Love
Mum

A month later …

Hi Mum and Dad
(18) (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it's beautiful there and (22) (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) (we/leave), Jon (24) (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) (damage).

(27) (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). (29) (we/stay) there for a week before (30) (fly) to New Zealand. (31) (that/be) different, I'm sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.
Love
Nick

Hi Nick
Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) (I/let) you know when (34) (we/get) the results.

We're all OK. Dad and I (35) (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!
Love
Mum
32 Which is correct?

1. Don’t forget **to switch** (B) off the light before you go out.
   - A switch  B to switch  C switching

2. It’s late. I must **go** now.
   - A go  B to go  C going

3. I’m sorry, but I haven’t got time **to talk** to you now.
   - A for talking  B to talk  C talking

4. Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys **cooking**
   - A cook  B to cook  C cooking

5. We’ve decided **to go** away for a few days.
   - A go  B to go  C going

6. You’re making too much noise. Can you please stop **shouting**?
   - A shout  B to shout  C shouting

7. Would you like **to come** to dinner on Sunday?
   - A come  B to come  C coming

8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me **help** you.
   - A help  B to help  C helping

9. There’s a swimming pool near my house. I go **swimming** every day.
   - A to swim  B to swimming  C swimming

10. Did you use a dictionary **to translate** the letter?
    - A to translate  B for translating  C for translate

11. I’d love **a car like yours**.
    - A have  B to have  C having

12. Could you **help me with this bag**, please?
    - A help  B to help  C helping

13. I don’t mind **to sit** here, but I’d prefer to sit by the window.
    - A sit  B to sit  C sitting

14. Do you want **me to help you**?
    - A that I help  B me to help  C me helping

15. I usually read the newspaper **before** work.
    - A start  B to start  C starting

16. I wasn’t feeling very well, but the medicine made me **feel** better.
    - A feel  B to feel  C feeling

17. Shall I phone the restaurant **to reserve** a table?
    - A for reserve  B for reserving  C to reserve

18. Tom looked at me **without saying** anything.
    - A say  B saying  C to say
Complete the sentences.

1. Can you pass the sugar, please?
   - Yes, there's some in

2. Have you got a car?
   - No, I can't drive.

3. Have you got any milk?
   - I'm

4. What do you do?
   - I went to

5. I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to
   - The End

6. What did you do last night?
   - I went to

7. Shall we walk home?
   - No, let's get

8. Can you play the piano?
   - Yes, but not very well.

9. I'm interested in

10. What's the difference between those cars?
    - Nothing, they're
Additional exercises

34 Write a/an or the if necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

1 Who is ________ best player in your team?
2 I don’t watch ________ television very often.
3 ‘Is there ________ bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at ________ end of this street.’
4 I can’t ride ________ horse.
5 ________ sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you ________ tourist?
7 What did you have for ________ lunch?
8 Who was ________ first President of ________ United States?
9 ‘What time is it?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t got ________ watch.’
10 I’m sorry, but I’ve forgotten your name. I can never remember ________ names.
11 What time is ________ next train to London?
12 Kate never sends ________ emails. She prefers to phone people.
13 ‘Where’s Sue?’ ‘She’s in ________ garden.’
14 Excuse me. I’m looking for ________ Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill ________ last week, so he didn’t go to ________ work.
16 Everest is ________ highest mountain in ________ world.
17 I usually listen to ________ radio while I’m having ________ breakfast.
18 I like ________ sport. My favourite sport is ________ basketball.
19 Julia is ________ doctor. Her husband is ________ art teacher.
20 My apartment is on ________ second floor. Turn left at ________ top of ________ stairs, and it’s on ________ right.
21 After ________ dinner, we watched ________ television.
22 Last year we had ________ wonderful holiday in ________ south of ________ France.

prepositions

35 Write a preposition (in/for/by etc.).

1 Helen is studying law ________ university.
2 What is the longest river ________ Europe?
3 Is there anything ________ television this evening?
4 We arrived ________ the hotel after midnight.
5 ‘Where’s Mike?’ ‘He’s ________ holiday’
6 Tom hasn’t got up yet. He’s still ________ bed.
7 Lisa is away. She’s been away ________ Monday.
8 The next meeting is ________ 15 April.
9 I usually go to work ________ car.
10 There’s too much sugar ________ my coffee.
11 Kevin lived in London ________ six months. He didn’t like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people ________ the party?
13 What are you doing ________ the moment? Are you working?
14 I don’t know any of the people ________ this photograph.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped ________ every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures ________ the walls.
17 ‘Did you buy that picture?’ ‘No, it was given to me ________ a friend of mine.’
18 I’m going away ________ a few days. I’ll be back ________ Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone ________ Italy. She’s ________ Milan at the moment.
20 Emma left school ________ fifteen and got a job ________ a shop.
If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don’t know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 314.

**IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Can you close the window, please?</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I cold</td>
<td>B I'm cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Tom in politics.</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A isn’t interested</td>
<td>B not interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 ‘?’ ‘No, she’s out.’</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Is at home your mother</td>
<td>B Does your mother at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 These postcards are nice.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A How much are they?</td>
<td>B How many are they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Look, there’s Sarah. a brown coat.</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A She wearing</td>
<td>B She has wearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 You can turn off the television.</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I’m not watching</td>
<td>B I’m not watching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 ‘today?’ ‘No, he’s at home.’</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Is working Paul</td>
<td>B Is work Paul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 Look, there’s Emily!</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Where she is going?</td>
<td>B Where she go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 The earth round the sun.</td>
<td>5, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A going</td>
<td>B go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10 We away at weekends.</td>
<td>5, 23, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A often go</td>
<td>B go often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11 We television very often.</td>
<td>6, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A not watch</td>
<td>B doesn’t watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12 ‘on Sundays?’ ‘No, not usually.’</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Do you work</td>
<td>B Are you work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13 I don’t understand this sentence. What?</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A mean this word</td>
<td>B means this word</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14 Please be quiet.</td>
<td>A I working. B I work. C I'm working. D I'm work.</td>
<td>8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15 Tom .........................................................................................................</td>
<td>A has B having C is having D have</td>
<td>8, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16 What ...........................................................................................................</td>
<td>A do you usually B are you usually doing C are you usually do D do you usually do E you usually</td>
<td>8, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. .................................................................</td>
<td>A She have B She have got C She has D She's got</td>
<td>9, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18 Tracey and Jeff .....................................................................................</td>
<td>A don't have B doesn't have C no have D haven't got E hasn't got</td>
<td>9, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 'Where's Rebecca?' '.............................................................................</td>
<td>A She is gone B She has gone C She goes D She have gone E She's gone</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 'Are Diane and Paul here?' 'No, they ..................................................</td>
<td>A don't arrive yet B have already arrived C haven't already arrived D haven't arrived yet</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.3</strong> My sister ........................................ by plane.</td>
<td><strong>STUDY UNIT</strong></td>
<td><strong>17, 23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A has never travel</td>
<td>B has never travelled</td>
<td>C is never travelled</td>
<td>D has never been travelled</td>
<td>E have never travelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.4</strong> ........................................ that woman before, but I can’t remember where.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A I see</td>
<td>B I seen</td>
<td>C I’ve saw</td>
<td>D I’ve seen</td>
<td>E I’ve seeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.5</strong> 'How long ........................................ married?' 'Since 1998.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A you are</td>
<td>B you have been</td>
<td>C has you been</td>
<td>D are you</td>
<td>E have you been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.6</strong> ‘Do you know Lisa?’ ‘Yes, ........................................ her for a long time.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A I knew</td>
<td>B I’ve known</td>
<td>C I know</td>
<td>D I am knowing</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.7</strong> Richard has been in Canada ..........................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A for six months</td>
<td>B since six months</td>
<td>C six months ago</td>
<td>D in six months</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.8</strong> ‘When did Tom go out?’ ........................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A For ten minutes.</td>
<td>B Since ten minutes.</td>
<td>C Ten minutes ago.</td>
<td>D In ten minutes.</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.9</strong> We ........................................ a holiday last year.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A don’t have</td>
<td>B haven’t had</td>
<td>C hasn’t had</td>
<td>D didn’t have</td>
<td>E didn’t bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.10</strong> Where ........................................ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn’t find you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A you were</td>
<td>B you have been</td>
<td>C was you</td>
<td>D have you been</td>
<td>E were you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.1</strong> This house ........................................ 100 years ago.</td>
<td><strong>STUDY UNIT</strong></td>
<td><strong>21, 23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A is built</td>
<td>B is building</td>
<td>C was building</td>
<td>D was built</td>
<td>E built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.2</strong> We ........................................ to the party last week.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A didn’t invite</td>
<td>B didn’t invited</td>
<td>C weren’t invited</td>
<td>D wasn’t invited</td>
<td>E haven’t been invited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.3</strong> ‘Where ........................................ born?’ ‘In Cairo.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A you are</td>
<td>B you were</td>
<td>C was you</td>
<td>D are you</td>
<td>E were you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.4</strong> My car is at the garage. It ........................................ .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A is being repaired</td>
<td>B is repairing</td>
<td>C have been repaired</td>
<td>D repaired</td>
<td>E repairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.5</strong> I can’t find my keys. I think ........................................ .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A they’ve been stolen</td>
<td>B they are stolen</td>
<td>C they’ve stolen</td>
<td>D they’re being stolen</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verb forms

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.1</strong> It ........................................ , so we didn’t need an umbrella.</td>
<td><strong>STUDY UNIT</strong></td>
<td><strong>23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A wasn’t rained</td>
<td>B wasn’t rain</td>
<td>C didn’t raining</td>
<td>D wasn’t raining</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.2</strong> Somebody ........................................ this window.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A has broke</td>
<td>B has broken</td>
<td>C has breaked</td>
<td>D has break</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT**

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.3</strong> My sister ........................................ by plane.</td>
<td><strong>STUDY UNIT</strong></td>
<td><strong>17, 23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A has never travel</td>
<td>B has never travelled</td>
<td>C is never travelled</td>
<td>D has never been travelled</td>
<td>E have never travelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.4</strong> ........................................ that woman before, but I can’t remember where.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A I see</td>
<td>B I seen</td>
<td>C I’ve saw</td>
<td>D I’ve seen</td>
<td>E I’ve seeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.5</strong> 'How long ........................................ married?' 'Since 1998.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A you are</td>
<td>B you have been</td>
<td>C has you been</td>
<td>D are you</td>
<td>E have you been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.6</strong> ‘Do you know Lisa?’ ‘Yes, ........................................ her for a long time.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A I knew</td>
<td>B I’ve known</td>
<td>C I know</td>
<td>D I am knowing</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.7</strong> Richard has been in Canada ..........................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A for six months</td>
<td>B since six months</td>
<td>C six months ago</td>
<td>D in six months</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.8</strong> ‘When did Tom go out?’ ........................................</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A For ten minutes.</td>
<td>B Since ten minutes.</td>
<td>C Ten minutes ago.</td>
<td>D In ten minutes.</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.9</strong> We ........................................ a holiday last year.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A don’t have</td>
<td>B haven’t had</td>
<td>C hasn’t had</td>
<td>D didn’t have</td>
<td>E didn’t bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3.10</strong> Where ........................................ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn’t find you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A you were</td>
<td>B you have been</td>
<td>C was you</td>
<td>D have you been</td>
<td>E were you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.1</strong> This house ........................................ 100 years ago.</td>
<td><strong>STUDY UNIT</strong></td>
<td><strong>21, 23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A is built</td>
<td>B is building</td>
<td>C was building</td>
<td>D was built</td>
<td>E built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.2</strong> We ........................................ to the party last week.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A didn’t invite</td>
<td>B didn’t invited</td>
<td>C weren’t invited</td>
<td>D wasn’t invited</td>
<td>E haven’t been invited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.3</strong> ‘Where ........................................ born?’ ‘In Cairo.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A you are</td>
<td>B you were</td>
<td>C was you</td>
<td>D are you</td>
<td>E were you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.4</strong> My car is at the garage. It ........................................ .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A is being repaired</td>
<td>B is repairing</td>
<td>C have been repaired</td>
<td>D repaired</td>
<td>E repairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4.5</strong> I can’t find my keys. I think ........................................ .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A they’ve been stolen</td>
<td>B they are stolen</td>
<td>C they’ve stolen</td>
<td>D they’re being stolen</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verb forms

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.1</strong> It ........................................ , so we didn’t need an umbrella.</td>
<td><strong>STUDY UNIT</strong></td>
<td><strong>23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A wasn’t rained</td>
<td>B wasn’t rain</td>
<td>C didn’t raining</td>
<td>D wasn’t raining</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5.2</strong> Somebody ........................................ this window.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A has broke</td>
<td>B has broken</td>
<td>C has breaked</td>
<td>D has break</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Future

6.1 Andrew _________________ tennis tomorrow.
    A is playing  B play  C plays  D is play

6.2 _________________ out tonight?
    A Are you going  B Are you go  C Do you go  D Go you
    E Do you going

6.3 ‘What time is the concert tonight?’ ‘It _________________ at 7.30.’
    A is start  B is starting  C starts  D start  E starting

6.4 What _________________ to the wedding next week?
    A are you wearing  B are you going to wear  C do you wear
    D you are going to wear

6.5 I think Kelly _________________ the exam.
    A passes  B will pass  C will be pass  D will passing

6.6 _________________ to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us?
    A We go  B We'll go  C We're going  D We will going

6.7 _________________ you tomorrow, OK? ‘OK, bye.’
    A I phone  B I phoning  C I'm phoning  D I'll phone

6.8 There's a good film on TV tonight. _________________ it.
    A I watch  B I'll watch  C I'm going to watch  D I'll watching

6.9 It's a nice day. _________________ for a walk?
    A Do we go  B Shall we go  C Are we go  D We go  E Go we

Modals, imperative etc.

7.1 _________________ to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure.
    A I'll go  B I'm going  C I may go  D I might go

7.2 _________________ here? ‘Yes, of course.’
    A Can I sit  B Do I sit  C May I sit  D Can l to sit

7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel _________________.
    A can't come  B can't to come  C can't coming  D couldn't come

7.4 Before Maria came to Britain, she _________________ understand much English.
    A can  B can't  C not  D couldn't  E doesn't

7.5 We _________________ walk home last night. There were no buses.
    A have to  B had to  C must  D must to  E must have

7.6 I _________________ go yet. I can stay a little longer.
    A must  B mustn't  C must not  D don't need  E don't need to

7.7 It's a good film. You _________________ go and see it.
    A should to  B ought to  C ought  D should  E need

7.8 What time _________________ go to the dentist tomorrow?
    A you must  B you have to  C have you to  D do you have to

7.9 We _________________ wait long for the bus - it came in a few minutes.
    A don't have to  B hadn't to  C didn't have to  D didn't had to  E mustn't
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

7.10 '________________________ some coffee?' 'No, thank you.'
A Are you liking  B You like  C Would you like  D Do you like

7.11 Please _______________________. Stay here with me.
A don't go  B you no go  C go not  D you don't go

7.12 Dave ________________________ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
A working  B works  C worked  D use to work  E used to work

There and it

8.1 Excuse me, ________________________, a hotel near here?
A has there  B is there  C there is  D is it

8.2 __________________________ a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous.
A Have  B It has  C There have  D They are  E There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but ______________________ anything to eat.
A there wasn't  B there weren't  C it wasn't  D there hasn't been

8.4 __________________________ three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
A It's  B It has  C There is  D There are

8.5 __________________________ true that you're going away?
A Is there  B Is it  C Is  D Are you

Auxiliary verbs

9.1 I haven't got a car, but my sister ______________________.
A have  B is  C has  D hasn't  E has got

9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Sue ________________________
A does  B doesn't  C do  D does like  E likes

9.3 'Nicole got married last week.' ______________________. Really?'
A Is she?  B Got she?  C Did she?  D Has she?

9.4 You haven't met my mother, ______________________?
A haven't you  B have you  C did you  D you have  E you haven't

9.5 Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers ______________________
A too  B either  C neither  D never

9.6 'I'd like to go to Australia.' ______________________
A So do I.  B So am I.  C So would I.  D Neither do I.
E So I would.

9.7 Sue ______________________ much at weekends.
A don't  B doesn't  C don't do  D doesn't do

Questions

10.1 'When ______________________ ?' 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.'
A did the telephone invent  B has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone  D was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented

10.2 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How ______________________ that?'
A did you  B you did  C you did do  D did you do
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

10.3 Why ________________ me last night? I was waiting for you to phone.
   A didn’t you phone   B you nor phone   C you don’t phone
   D you didn’t phone

10.4 ‘Who ________________ in this house?’ ‘I don’t know.’
   A lives       B does live   C does lives   D living

10.5 What ________________ when you told him the story?
   A said Paul   B did Paul say   C Paul said   D did Paul said

10.6 ‘Tom’s father is in hospital.’ ________________
   A In which hospital he is?   B In which hospital he is in?
   C Which hospital he is in?   D Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good holiday? ________________
   A How was the weather like?   B What was the weather like?
   C What the weather was like?   D Was the weather like?

10.8 ________________ taller – Joe or Gary?
   A Who is       B What is   C Which is   D Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. ________________ is yours?
   A What       B Who       C Which       D How       E Which one

10.10 How long ________________ to cross the Atlantic by ship?
   A is it       B does it need   C does it take   D does it want

10.11 I don’t remember what ________________ at the party.
   A Kate was wearing      B was wearing Kate      C was Kate wearing

10.12 ‘Do you know ________________?’ ‘Yes, I think so.’
   A if Jack is at home   B is Jack at home   C whether Jack is at home
   D that Jack is at home

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that ________________ me, but he didn’t.
   A he phone       B he phones   C he’ll phone   D he’s going to phone
   E he would phone

11.2 ‘Why did Tim go to bed so early?’ ‘He ________________ .’
   A said he was tired   B said that he was tired   C said me he was tired
   D told me he was tired   E told that he was tired

-ing and to ...

12.1 You shouldn’t ________________ so hard.
   A working       B work       C to work   D worked

12.2 It’s late. I ________________ now.
   A must to go       B have go   C have to going   D have to go

12.3 Tina has decided ________________ her car.
   A sell       B to sell   C selling   D to selling

12.4 I don’t mind ________________ early.
   A get up       B to get up   C getting up   D to getting up
### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>Do you like __________ early?</td>
<td>A get up  B to get up  C getting up  D to getting up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>Do you want __________ you some money?</td>
<td>A me lend  B me lending  C me to lend  D that I lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>He’s very funny. He makes __________.</td>
<td>A me laugh  B me laughing  C me to laugh  D that I laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>Paula went to the shop __________ a newspaper.</td>
<td>A for get  B for to get  C for getting  D to get  E get</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Go, get, do, make and have

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>It’s a nice day. Let’s go __________.</td>
<td>A for a swim  B on a swim  C to swimming  D swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>I’m sorry your mother is ill. I hope she __________ better soon.</td>
<td>A has  B makes  C gets  D goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>Kate __________ the car and drove away.</td>
<td>A went into  B went in  C got in  D got into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll __________ it.’</td>
<td>A do  B make  C get  D open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>I’m sorry. I __________ a mistake.</td>
<td>A did  B made  C get  D had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>‘_________ a good time in London?’ ‘Yes, I really enjoyed it.’</td>
<td>A Have you  B Had you  C Do you have  D Did you have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pronouns and possessives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>I don’t want this book. You can have __________.</td>
<td>A it  B them  C her  D him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with __________?</td>
<td>A her  B they  C them  D him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>I know Donna, but I don’t know __________ husband.</td>
<td>A their  B his  C she  D her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>Oxford is famous for __________ university.</td>
<td>A his  B its  C it’s  D their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>I didn’t have an umbrella, so Helen gave me __________.</td>
<td>A her  B hers  C her umbrella  D she’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>I went out to meet a friend of __________.</td>
<td>A mine  B my  C me  D I  E myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>We had a good holiday. We enjoyed __________.</td>
<td>A us  B our  C ours  D ourself  E ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>Kate and Helen are good friends. They know __________ well.</td>
<td>A each other  B them  C themselves  D themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.9 Have you met ________________?  
A the wife of Mr Black  
B Mr Black wife  
C the wife Mr Black  
D Mr Black’s wife  
E the Mr Black’s wife  

14.10 Have you seen ________________?  
A the car of my parents  
B my parent’s car  
C my parents’ car  
D my parents car  

A and the  
15.1 I’m going to buy ________________  
A a hat and umbrella  
B a hat and a umbrella  
C a hat and an umbrella  
D an hat and an umbrella  

15.2 ‘What’s your job?’ ________________  
A I dentist  
B I’m a dentist  
C I’m dentists  
D I do dentist  

15.3 I’m going shopping. I need ________________  
A some new jeans  
B a new jeans  
C a new pair of jeans  
D a new pair jeans  

15.4 I like the people here. ________________ very friendly.  
A She is  
B They are  
C They is  
D It is  
E He is  

15.5 We can’t get into the house without ________________  
A some key  
B a key  
C key  

15.6 I’d like ________________ about hotels in London.  
A some information  
B some informations  
C an information  

15.7 We enjoyed our holiday ________________ was very nice.  
A Hotel  
B A hotel  
C An hotel  
D The hotel  

15.8 My house is at ________________.  
A end of street  
B end of the street  
C the end of the street  
D the end of street  

15.9 What did you have for ________________?  
A the breakfast  
B breakfast  
C a breakfast  

15.10 I finish ________________ at 5 o’clock every day.  
A the work  
B work  
C a work  

15.11 I’m tired. I’m going ________________.  
A in bed  
B in the bed  
C to a bed  
D to the bed  
E to bed  

15.12 We don’t eat ________________ very often.  
A the meat  
B some meat  
C a meat  
D meat  

15.13 ________________ is in New York.  
A The Times Square  
B Times Square  

15.14 My friends are staying at ________________.  
A the Regent Hotel  
B Regent Hotel  

278
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Determiners and pronouns

16.1 ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’  ‘Oh, ______________________ nice.’
A it’s  B this is  C that’s

16.2 ‘Is there a bank near here?’  ‘Yes, there’s ______________________ at the end of this street.’
A some  B it  C one  D a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have ______________________ ?
A a clean one  B a clean one  C clean  D a clean

16.4 I’m going shopping. I’m going to buy ______________________ clothes.
A any  B some

16.5 ‘Where’s your luggage?’  ‘I haven’t got ______________________.’
A one  B some  C any

16.6 Tracey and Jeff ______________________.
A have got no children  B haven’t got no children  C haven’t got any children
D have got any children

16.7 ‘How much money have you got?’  ‘____________________.’

16.8 There is ______________________ in the room. It’s empty.
A anybody  B nobody  C anyone  D no-one

16.9 ‘What did you say?’  ‘____________________.’

16.10 I’m hungry. I want ______________________.
A something for eat  B something to eat  C something for eating

16.11 Bill watches TV for about two hours ______________________.
A all evening  B all evenings  C all the evenings  D every evenings
E every evening

16.12 ______________________ friends.
A Everybody need  B Everybody needs  C Everyone need  D Everyone needs

16.13 ______________________ children like playing.
A Most  B The most  C Most of  D The most of

16.14 I like ______________________ those pictures.
A both  B both of  C either  D either of

16.15 I haven’t read ______________________ these books.
A neither  B neither of  C either  D either of

16.16 Have you got ______________________ friends?
A a lot of  B much  C many  D much of  E many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema ______________________.
A a lot of  B much  C many  D a lot

16.18 There were ______________________ people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.
A a little  B few  C little  D a few of

16.19 They have ______________________ money, so they’re not poor.
A a little  B a few  C few  D little  E little of
Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any ........................................... .
   A foreign languages  B languages foreign  C languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very ........................................... .
   A quick  B quicker  C quickly

17.3 You speak English very ........................................... .
   A good  B fluent  C well  D slow

17.4 Helen wants ........................................... .
   A a more big car  B a car more big  C a car bigger  D a bigger car

17.5 'Do you feel better today?'  'No, I feel ........................................... .'
   A good  B worse  C more bad  D more worse

17.6 Athens is older ........................................... Rome.
   A as  B than  C that  D of

17.7 I can run faster ........................................... .
   A than him  B that he can  C than he can  D as he can  E as he

17.8 Tennis isn't ........................................... football.
   A popular as  B popular than  C as popular than  D so popular that
   E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same ........................................... yesterday.
   A as  B that  C than  D like

17.10 The Europa Hotel is ........................................... in the city.
   A the more expensive hotel  B the most expensive hotel
   C the hotel most expensive  D the hotel the more expensive
   E the hotel more expensive

17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the ........................................... film I've ever seen.
   A worse  B baddest  C most bad  D worst  E more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got ........................................... .
   A enough money  B money enough  C enough of money

17.13 Is your English ........................................... a conversation?
   A enough good to have  B good enough for have  C enough good for
   D good enough to have

17.14 I'm ........................................... out.
   A too tired for go  B too much tired for going  C too tired to go
   D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She ........................................... .
   A reads every day a newspaper  B reads a newspaper every day
   C every day reads a newspaper

18.2 ........................................... coffee in the morning.
   A I drink always  B Always I drink  C I always drink
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

18.3 _______________ during the day.
   A They are at home never  B They are never at home
   C They never are at home  D Never they are at home

18.4 ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘She _______________.’
   A isn’t here yet  B isn’t here already  C isn’t here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave _______________.
   A Sarah the keys  B to Sarah the keys  C the keys Sarah
   D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when _______________ more time.
   A I’ll have  B I had  C I have  D I’m going to have

19.2 _______________ late this evening, don’t wait for me.
   A If I’m  B If I’ll be  C When I’m  D When I’ll be

19.3 I don’t know the answer. If I _______________ the answer, I’d tell you.
   A know  B would know  C have known  D knew

19.4 I like this jacket. _______________ it if it wasn’t so expensive.
   A I buy  B I’ll buy  C I bought  D I’d bought  E I’d buy

19.5 Emma lives in a house _______________ is 400 years old.
   A who  B that  C which  D it  E what

19.6 The people _______________ work in the office are very friendly.
   A who  B that  C they  D which  E what

19.7 Did you find the book _______________?
   A who you wanted  B that you wanted  C what you wanted
   D you wanted  E you wanted it

19.8 I met _______________ can speak six languages.
   A a woman who  B a woman which  C a woman  D a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! I’ll see you _______________.
   A until Friday  B at Friday  C in Friday  D on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves _______________ five minutes.
   A at  B on  C from  D after  E in

20.3 ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘_______________ Monday.’
   A On  B To  C Until  D Till  E Since

20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played _______________ two hours.
   A in  B for  C since  D during

20.5 I always have breakfast before _______________ to work.
   A I go  B go  C to go  D going

20.6 Write your name _______________ the top of the page.
   A at  B on  C in  D to
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

20.7 There are a lot of apples .......................................................... those trees.
   A at       B on       C in       D to

20.8 What’s the largest city ........................................... the world?
   A at       B on       C in       D of

20.9 The office is ...................................................... the first floor.
   A at       B on       C in       D to

20.10 I met a lot of people ................................................... the party.
     A on       B to       C in       D at

20.11 I want to go ................................................... Italy next year.
     A at       B on       C in       D to

20.12 What time did you arrive ........................................... the hotel?
     A at       B on       C in       D to

20.13 ‘Where is David in this picture?’ ‘He’s .................................... Barbara.’
     A at front of     B in the front of    C in front of    D in front from

20.14 I jumped .............................................................. the wall into the garden.
     A on       B through    C across    D over    E above

20.15 Jane isn’t at work this week. She’s ...................................... holiday.
     A on       B in       C for      D to      E at

20.16 Do you like travelling ................................................?
     A with train    B with the train    C in train    D on train    E by train

20.17 I’m not very good ...................................................... telling stories.
     A on       B with    C at      D in      E for

20.18 Tom left without .................................................... goodbye.
     A say       B saying    C to say    D that he said

20.19 I’m going to phone .................................................... this evening
     A with my parents   B to my parents    C at my parents    D my parents

20.20 ‘Do you like eating in restaurants?’ ‘It depends .................................... the restaurant.’
     A in       B at       C of      D on      E over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 The car stopped and a woman got ......................................
     A off      B down    C out      D out of

21.2 It was cold, so I .......................................................
     A put on my coat    B put my coat on    C put the coat on me
     D put me the coat on

21.3 I’ve got Rachel’s keys. I have to ....................................... to her.
     A give back    B give them back    C give back them    D give it back
### Key to Exercises

#### UNIT 1

1. their
2. it isn’t / it’s not
3. that’s
4. I’m not
5. you aren’t / you’re not

#### UNIT 2

1. They’re / They are playing
2. It’s / It is
3. Who’s / Who is
4. How old are
5. How much are

#### UNIT 3

1. They’re / They are having
2. She’s / She is
3. Here’s / Here is
4. I’m / I am
5. He’s / He is
6. He’s / He is
7. I’m / I am
8. It is

#### UNIT 4

1. I’m / I am
2. Are you going now?
3. Is it raining?
4. Are you enjoying the film?
5. Is that clock working?
6. Are you waiting for a bus?

---

**Example answers:**

1. My name is Robert.
2. I’m from Australia.
3. I’m 25.
4. I’m a gardener.
5. My favourite colours are black and white.
6. I’m interested in plants.

2. They’re / They are cold.
3. He’s / He is hot.
4. They’re / They are hungry.
5. She’s / She is angry.

3. It’s / It is windy today.
4. My hands are cold.
5. Brazil is a very big country.
6. Diamonds aren’t / are not cheap.
7. Toronto isn’t / is not in the US.
8. I’m / I am hungry.

---

**Example answers:**

1. My name is Robert.
2. I’m from Australia.
3. I’m 25.
4. I’m a gardener.
5. My favourite colours are black and white.
6. I’m interested in plants.

2. They’re / They are cold.
3. He’s / He is hot.
4. They’re / They are hungry.
5. She’s / She is angry.

3. It’s / It is windy today.
4. My hands are cold.
5. Brazil is a very big country.
6. Diamonds aren’t / are not cheap.
7. Toronto isn’t / is not in the US.
8. I’m / I am hungry.
4.2
2 Where is she going?
3 What are you eating?
4 Why are you crying?
5 What are they looking at?
6 Why is he laughing?

4.3
3 Are you listening to me?
4 Where are your friends going?
5 Are your parents watching television?
6 What is Jessica cooking?
7 Why are you looking at me?
8 Is the bus coming?

4.4
2 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
3 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn’t. / No, it’s not.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
6 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.

UNIT 5
5.1
2 thinks 5 has
3 flies 6 finishes
4 dances

5.2
2 live 5 They go
3 She eats 6 He sleeps
4 He plays

5.3
2 open 7 costs
3 closes 8 cost
4 teaches 9 boils
5 meet 10 like ... likes
6 washes

5.4
2 I never go to the cinema.
3 Martina always works hard.
4 Children usually like chocolate.
5 Julia always enjoys parties.
6 I often forget people’s names.
7 Tim never watches television.
8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
9 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5
Example answers:
2 I sometimes read in bed.
3 I often get up before 7 o’clock.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6
6.1
2 Jane doesn’t play the piano very well.
3 They don’t know my phone number.
4 We don’t work very hard.
5 He doesn’t have a bath every day.
6 You don’t do the same thing every day.

6.2
2 Kate doesn’t like classical music.
I like (or I don’t like) classical music.
3 Ben and Sophie don’t like boxing.
Kate likes boxing.
I like (or I don’t like) boxing.
4 Ben and Sophie like horror films.
Kate doesn’t like horror films.
I like (or I don’t like) horror films.

6.3
Example answers:
2 I never go to the theatre.
3 I don’t ride a bicycle very often.
4 I never eat in restaurants.
5 I often travel by train.

6.4
2 doesn’t use
3 don’t go
4 doesn’t wear
5 don’t know
6 doesn’t cost
7 don’t see

6.5
3 don’t know
4 doesn’t talk
5 drinks
6 don’t believe
7 like
8 doesn’t eat

UNIT 7
7.1
2 Do you play tennis?
3 Does Lucy live near here?
4 Do Tom’s friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
6 Do you do yoga every morning?
7 Does Paul often go away? / Does he often go away?
8 Do you want to be famous?
9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2
3 How often do you watch TV?
4 What do you want for dinner?
5 Do you like football?
6 Does your brother like football?
7 What do you do in your free time?
8 Where does your sister work?
9 Do you often go to the cinema?
10 What does this word mean?
11 Does it often snow here?
12 What time do you usually go to bed?
13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3
2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
3 do you start
4 do you work
5 do you go
6 does he do
7 does he teach
8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4
2 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn’t.
5 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
UNIT 8

8.1
2 No, she isn’t.
Yes, she does.
She’s playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does.
Yes, he is.
He’s cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren’t.
Yes, they do.
They teach.

8.2
2 don’t 6 do
3 are 7 does
4 does 8 doesn’t
5 is/... don’t

8.3
1 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you read
7 you’re sitting
8 I don’t understand
9 I’m going... Are you coming
10 does your father finish
11 I’m not listening
12 He’s/He is cooking
13 doesn’t usually drive... usually walks
14 doesn’t like... She prefers

8.4
1’ve got a dog. / I have a dog. or
I haven’t got a dog. / I don’t have a dog.
3 I’ve got a bike. / I have a bike. or
I haven’t got a bike. / I don’t have a bike.
10 (Example answer) I’ve got a brother and a sister.

8.5
1 I’ve got four wheels. or
I haven’t got four wheels.
2 I’ve got a lot of friends. or
I haven’t got a lot of friends.
3 I haven’t got a key. or
I don’t have a key.
4 I haven’t got much time. or
I don’t have much time.

UNIT 9

9.1
2 he’s got
3 they’ve got
4 she hasn’t got
5 it’s got
6 I haven’t got

9.2
2 He’s got a computer. or
He has a computer.
3 He hasn’t got a dog. or
He doesn’t have a dog.
4 He hasn’t got a mobile phone. or
He doesn’t have a mobile phone.
5 He’s got a watch. or
He has a watch.
6 He’s got two brothers and a sister. or
He has two brothers and a sister.
7 I’ve got a computer. / I have a computer. or
I haven’t got a computer. / I don’t have a computer.

10.1
2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
6 (Example answer) I was at work.

10.2
2 is... was 6 ‘re/are
3 ’m/am 7 Was
4 was 8 was
5 were 9 are... were

10.3
2 wasn’t... was
3 was... were
4 ‘Were Kate and Bill at the party?’ ‘Kate was there, but Bill wasn’t.’ or
‘Kate wasn’t there, but Bill was.’
5 were
6 weren’t... were

UNIT 10

11.1
2 opened
3 started... finished
4 wanted
5 happened
6 ruined
7 enjoyed... stayed
8 died

11.2
2 saw 8 thought
3 played 9 copied
4 paid 10 knew
5 visited 11 put
6 bought 12 spoke
7 went

11.3
2 got 9 checked
3 had 10 had
4 left 11 waited
5 drove 12 departed
6 got 13 arrived
7 parked 14 took
8 walked
11.4
2 lost her keys
3 met her friends
4 bought two newspapers
5 went to the cinema
6 ate an orange
7 had a shower
8 came (to see us)

11.5
Example answers:
2 I got up late yesterday.
3 I met some friends at lunchtime.
4 I went to the supermarket.
5 I phoned a lot of people.
6 I lost my keys.

UNIT 12
12.1
2 didn't work 4 didn't have
3 didn't go 5 didn't do

12.2
2 Did you enjoy the party?
3 Did you have a good holiday?
4 Did you finish work early?
5 Did you sleep well last night?

12.3
2 I got up before 7 o'clock.
or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
3 I had a shower. or I didn't have a shower.
4 I bought a magazine. or I didn't buy a magazine.
5 I ate meat. or I didn't eat meat.
6 I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4
2 did you arrive
3 Did you win
4 did you go
5 did it cost
6 Did you go to bed late
7 Did you have a nice time
8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5
2 bought 6 didn't have
3 Did it rain 7 did you do
4 didn't stay 8 didn't know
5 opened

UNIT 13
13.1
2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tim was in his car. He was driving.
4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 (Example answer) I was in a café. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2
2 she was playing tennis
3 she was reading a newspaper
4 she was cooking (lunch)
5 she was having breakfast
6 she was cleaning the kitchen

13.3
2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining?
4 Why was Sue driving
5 Was Tim wearing

13.4
2 He was carrying a bag.
3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
4 He was eating an ice cream.
5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
6 He wasn't going home.
7 He was wearing a hat.
8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14
14.1
1 happened ... was painting ... fell
2 arrived ... got ... were waiting
3 was walking ... met ... was going ... was carrying ... stopped
4 was studying
5 did the post arrive ... came ... was having
6 didn't go
7 were you driving ... stopped ... wasn't driving

UNIT 15
15.1
2 She has/She's closed the door.
3 They have/They've gone to bed.
4 It has/It's stopped raining.
5 He has/He's had a shower.
6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2
2 've bought / have bought
3 's gone / has gone
4 Have you seen
5 has broken
6 've told / have told
7 has taken
8 haven't seen
9 has she gone
10 've forgotten / have forgotten
11 've invited / has invited
12 Have you decided
13 haven't told
14 've read / have read

UNIT 16
16.1
2 He's/He has just got up.
3 They've/They have just bought a car.
4 The race has just started.

16.2
2 they've /they have already seen it.
3 I've / I have already phoned him.
4 He's/He has already gone (away).
5 I've / I have already read it.
6 She's/She has already started (it).

16.3
2 The bus has just gone.
3 The train hasn't left yet.
4 He hasn't opened it yet.
Key to Exercises

UNIT 18

18.1
3 have been
4 has been
5 have lived / have been living
6 has worked / has been working
7 has had
8 have been learning

18.2
2 How long have they been there? or ... been in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her? or ... known Amy?
4 How long has she been learning Italian?
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ... ?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

18.3
2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4
2 I know
3 I've known
4 have you been waiting
5 works
6 She has been reading
7 have you lived
8 I've had
9 is ... He has been

UNIT 19

19.1
3 for 6 for
4 since 7 for
5 since 8 for ... since

19.2
Example answers:
2 A year ago.
3 A few weeks ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

19.3
3 for 20 years
4 20 years ago
5 an hour ago
6 a few days ago
7 for six months
8 for a long time

19.4
2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3 It’s been raining for an hour.
4 I've known Sue since 2002.
5 Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6 Liz has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5
Example answers:
1 I've lived in ... all my life.
2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
3 I've been learning English for six months.
4 I've known Chris for a long time.
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

20.1
2 I started (it)
3 they arrived
4 she went (away)
5 I wore it
20.2
3 I finished
4 OK
5 did you finish
6 OK
7 (Steve's grandmother) died
8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3
3 played
4 did you go
5 Have you ever met
6 wasn't
7 's/has visited
8 switched
9 lived
10 haven't been

20.4
1 Did you have
2 Have you seen
went
havent seen
3 has worked / has been working
was worked
didn't enjoy
4 've/have seen
've/have never spoken
Have you ever spoken
met

UNIT 21
21.1
3 Glass is made from sand.
4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
5 This room isn't used very often.
6 Are we allowed to park here?
7 How is this word pronounced?
9 The house was painted last month.
10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 Three people were injured in the accident.
12 When was this bridge built?
13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
14 How were these windows broken?
15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

UNIT 21.2
2 Football is played in most ...
3 Why was the letter sent to ...?
4 ... where cars are repaired.
5 Where were you born?
6 How many languages are spoken ...
7 ... but nothing was stolen.
8 When was the bicycle invented?

21.3
3 is made
4 were damaged
5 was given
6 aren't
7 switched
8 was made
9 was stolen ... was found

21.4
2 Sally was born in Manchester.
3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 I was born in ...
5 My mother was born in ...

UNIT 22
22.1
2 A bridge is being built.
3 The windows are being cleaned.
4 The grass is being cut.

22.2
3 The window has been broken.
4 The roof is being repaired.
5 The car has been damaged.
6 The houses are being knocked down.
7 The trees have been cut down.
8 They have been invited to a party.

UNIT 22.3
3 has been repaired
4 was repaired
5 are made
6 were they built
7 Is the computer being used (or is anybody using the computer)

UNIT 23
23.1
3 are
4 Does
5 Do
6 is

23.2
2 don't
3 'm/am not
4 isn't
5 don't
6 doesn't
7 'm/am not
8 aren't / 're not

UNIT 24
24.1
3 got
4 brought
5 paid
6 enjoyed
7 bought
8 sat

24.2
2 began
3 are eaten
4 drank
5 drove
6 spoke
7 wrote
8 came
9 knew
10 took
UNIT 24
3 slept
4 saw
5 raised
6 lost ... seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built
11 learnt/learned
12 ridden
13 known
14 fell ... hurt
15 ran ... run

UNIT 25
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
4 Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

UNIT 26
2 I'm going to have a bath.
3 I'm going to buy a car.
4 We're going to play football.

UNIT 27
2 she'll be 5 she's
3 she was 6 she was
4 she'll be 7 she'll be

UNIT 28
2 I'll send 5 I'll do
3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay
4 I'll sit 7 I'll show

Key to Exercises
### UNIT 29

#### 29.1
1. I might see you tomorrow.
2. Sarah might forget to phone.
3. It might snow today.
4. I might be late tonight.
5. Mark might not be here next week.
6. I might not have time to go out.

#### 29.2
1. I might go away.
2. I might see her on Monday.
3. I might have fish.
4. I might have/take a taxi.
5. I might buy a new car.

#### 29.3
1. He might get up early.
2. He isn't working tomorrow.
3. He might be at home tomorrow morning.
4. He might watch television.
5. He's going out in the afternoon.
6. He might go shopping.

#### 29.4
**Example answers:**
1. I might read a newspaper.
2. I might go out with some friends in the evening.
3. I might have an egg for breakfast.

### UNIT 30

#### 30.1
1. Can you ski?
2. Can you play chess?
3. Can you run ten kilometres?
4. Can you drive (a car)?
5. Can you ride (a horse)?
6. I can/can't swim.
7. I can/can't ski.
8. I can/can't swim.
9. I can/can't play chess.
10. I can/can't run ten kilometres.
11. I can/can't drive (a car).
12. I can/can't ride (a horse).

#### 30.2
1. Can see 2. Can't find
2. Can't hear 3. Can speak
3. Can't hear 4. Can't decide
4. Can't find 5. Can go
5. Can't find 6. Can't go

#### 30.3
1. Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
2. Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
3. Can/Could I have your phone number (please)?
4. Can/Could I have a look at your newspaper (please)?
5. Can/Could I look at your newspaper (please)?

### UNIT 31

#### 31.1
1. Must meet
2. Must wash
3. Must learn
4. Must go
5. Must win
6. Must be

#### 31.2
1. I must 5. I had to
2. 1 had to 6. I had to
3. I must 7. I must

#### 31.3
1. Don't need to hurry
2. Mustn't lose
3. Don't need to wait
4. Mustn't forget
5. Don't need to phone

#### 31.4
1. C 4. B
2. A 5. D

#### 31.5
1. Don't need to
2. Had to
3. Must
4. Mustn't
5. Must
6. Had to
7. Don't need to
8. Mustn't

### UNIT 32

#### 32.1
1. You should go
2. You should eat
3. You should visit
4. You should wear
5. You should take

#### 32.2
1. He shouldn't eat so much.
2. She shouldn't work so hard.
3. He shouldn't drive so fast.

#### 32.4
2. Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3. Do you think I should get another job?
4. Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

#### 32.5
**Example answers:**
1. I think you should sell it.
2. I think she should have a holiday.
3. I don't think they should get married.
4. I don't think you should go to work.
5. I think he should go to the doctor.
6. I don't think we should stay there.

### UNIT 33

#### 33.1
1. Have to do
2. Has to read
3. Have to speak
4. Has to travel
5. Have to hit

#### 33.2
1. Have to go
2. Had to buy
3. Have to change
4. Had to answer

---

290
UNIT 35
35.1
5 Don’t sit
6 Have
7 Don’t forget
8 Sleep
9 Be ... Don’t drop
35.2
2 let’s take a taxi
3 let’s watch TV
4 let’s go to a restaurant
5 let’s wait a little
35.3
3 No, let’s not go out. or
4 No, don’t let’s go out.
5 No, don’t close the window.
6 No, don’t phone me (tonight).
7 No, let’s not wait for Andy.
or
8 No, don’t let’s wait for Andy.
9 No, don’t turn on the light.
8 No, let’s not go by bus. or
9 No, don’t let’s go by bus.

UNIT 36
36.1
2 He used to play football.
3 She used to be a taxi driver.
4 They used to live in the country.
5 He used to wear glasses.
6 This building used to be a hotel.
36.2
2–6
She used to play volleyball.
She used to go out most evenings. / She used to
She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
She used to go away two or three times a year. / She
She used to travel a lot.

UNIT 37
37.1
3 There’s/There is a hospital.
4 There isn’t a swimming pool.
5 There are two cinemas.
6 There isn’t a university.
7 There aren’t any big hotels.
37.2
Example answers:
3 There is a university in ...
4 There are a lot of big shops.
5 There isn’t an airport.
6 There aren’t many factories.
37.3
2 There’s/There is
3 is there
4 are there
5 are there
6 isn’t there
7 Is there
8 Are there
9 There’s / There is ...
There aren’t
37.4
2–6
There are eight planets in the solar system.
There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the USA.
37.5
2 It’s
3 There’s
4 There’s ... Is it
5 Is there ... there’s
6 It’s
7 Is there
UNIT 38

38.1
2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

38.2
3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren’t
6 There wasn’t
7 Were there
8 There wasn’t
9 There was
10 there weren’t

38.3
2 There are
3 There was
4 There’s/There is
5 There’s been/There has been or There was
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were ... there are
9 There have been
10 there will be or there are

UNIT 39

39.1
2 It’s cold. 5 It’s snowing.
3 It’s windy. 6 It’s cloudy.
4 It’s sunny/fine. or It’s a nice day.

39.2
2 It’s / It is
3 Is it
4 is it ... it’s / it is
5 It’s / It is
6 Is it
7 is it
8 It’s / It is
9 It’s / It is

39.3
2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4
3 It 6 it
4 It ... It 7 It ... there
5 There 8 It

39.5
2 It’s nice to see you again.
3 It’s impossible to work in this office.
4 It’s easy to make friends.
5 It’s interesting to visit different places.
6 It’s dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

40.1
2 is 5 will
3 can 6 was
4 has

40.2
2 I’m not 5 isn’t
3 weren’t 6 hasn’t
4 haven’t

40.3
doesn’t 6 does
4 do 7 don’t
5 did 8 didn’t

40.4
Example answers:
2 I like sport, but my sister doesn’t.
3 I don’t eat meat, but Jenny does.
4 I’m American, but my husband isn’t.
5 I haven’t been to Japan, but Jenny has.

40.5
2 wasn’t 7 has
3 are 8 do
4 has 9 hasn’t
5 can’t 10 will
6 did 11 might

40.6
2 Yes, I have. or No, I haven’t.
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn’t.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I am not.
6 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
7 Yes, I will. or No, I won’t.
8 Yes, I have. or No, I haven’t.
9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn’t.
10 Yes, I was. or No, I wasn’t.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 Do you? 5 Do I?
3 Didn’t you? 6 Did she?
4 Doesn’t she?

41.2
3 Have you? 8 Aren’t you?
4 Can’t she? 9 Did you?
5 Were you? 10 Does she?
6 Didn’t you? 11 Won’t you?
7 Is there? 12 Isn’t it?

41.3
2 aren’t they
3 wasn’t she
4 haven’t you
5 don’t you
6 doesn’t he
7 won’t you

41.4
2 are you 6 didn’t she
3 isn’t she 7 was it
4 can’t you 8 doesn’t she
5 do you 9 will you

UNIT 42

42.1
either 5 either
too 6 either
too 7 too

42.2
2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

42.3
1 So am I.
2 So can I. or I can’t.
3 Neither am I. or I am.
4 So do I. or I don’t.
5 Neither do I. or I do.
6 So did I. or I didn’t.
7 Neither have I. or I have.
8 Neither do I. or I do.
9 So am I. or I’m not.
10 Neither have I. or I have.
11 Neither did I. or I did.
12 So do I. or I don’t.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNIT 43</th>
<th>UNIT 44</th>
<th>UNIT 45</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>43.1</td>
<td>44.1</td>
<td>45.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 They aren’t / They’re not married.</td>
<td>3 Were you late this morning?</td>
<td>2 What fell off the shelf?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I haven’t had dinner.</td>
<td>4 Has Kate got a key?</td>
<td>3 Who wants to see me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 It isn’t cold today.</td>
<td>5 Will you be here tomorrow?</td>
<td>4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 We won’t be late.</td>
<td>6 Is Paul going out this evening?</td>
<td>5 What made you ill?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 You shouldn’t go.</td>
<td>7 Do you like your job?</td>
<td>6 Who is / Who’s coming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.2</td>
<td>44.2</td>
<td>45.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I don’t like cheese.</td>
<td>3 Do you use it a lot?</td>
<td>3 Who did you phone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 They didn’t understand.</td>
<td>4 Did you use it yesterday?</td>
<td>4 What happened last night?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 He doesn’t live here.</td>
<td>5 Do you enjoy driving?</td>
<td>5 Who knows the answer?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Don’t go away!</td>
<td>6 Are you a good driver?</td>
<td>6 Who did the washing-up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I didn’t do the shopping.</td>
<td>7 Have you ever had an accident?</td>
<td>7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.3</td>
<td>44.3</td>
<td>45.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 They haven’t arrived.</td>
<td>3 What are the children doing?</td>
<td>2 Who phoned you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I didn’t go to the bank.</td>
<td>4 How is cheese made?</td>
<td>What did she want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 He doesn’t speak German.</td>
<td>5 Is your sister coming to the party?</td>
<td>3 Who did you ask?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 We weren’t angry.</td>
<td>6 Why don’t you tell the truth?</td>
<td>What did he say?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 He won’t be pleased.</td>
<td>7 Have your guests arrived yet?</td>
<td>4 Who got married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Don’t</td>
<td>8 You haven’t</td>
<td>Who told you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 didn’t</td>
<td>9 Why didn’t Emily go to work?</td>
<td>5 Who did you meet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 haven’t</td>
<td>10 Was your car damaged in the accident?</td>
<td>What did she tell you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 won’t</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 Who won?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 didn’t</td>
<td></td>
<td>What did you do (after the game)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 weren’t</td>
<td></td>
<td>7 Who gave you a/the book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 hasn’t</td>
<td></td>
<td>What did Catherine give you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 shouldn’t / mustn’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.5</td>
<td>44.4</td>
<td>45.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 He wasn’t born in London.</td>
<td>3 What are you reading?</td>
<td>2 What are you looking for?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 He doesn’t like London.</td>
<td>4 What time did she go (to bed)?</td>
<td>3 Who did you go to the cinema with?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 He’d like to live in the country.</td>
<td>5 When are they going (on holiday)?</td>
<td>4 What/Who was the film about?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 He can drive.</td>
<td>6 Where did you see him?</td>
<td>5 Who did you give the money to?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 He hasn’t got a car.</td>
<td>7 Why can’t you come (to the party)?</td>
<td>6 Who was the book written by?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 He doesn’t read newspapers.</td>
<td>8 Where has she gone?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 He isn’t interested in politics.</td>
<td>9 How much (money) do you need?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 He watches TV most evenings.</td>
<td>10 Why doesn’t she like you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 He didn’t watch TV last night.</td>
<td>11 How often does it rain?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 He went out last night.</td>
<td>12 When did you do it? / … the shopping?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Key to Exercises

**46.2**
2. What are they looking at?  
3. Which restaurant is he going to?  
4. What are they talking about?  
5. What is she listening to?  
6. Which bus are they waiting for?

**46.3**
2. Which hotel did you stay at?  
3. Which (football) team does he play for?  
4. Which school did you go to?

**46.4**
2. What is the food like?  
3. What are the people like?  
4. What is the weather like?

**46.5**
2. What was the film like?  
3. What were the lessons like?  
4. What was the hotel like?

**UNIT 47**

**47.1**
3. What colour is it?  
4. What time did you get up?  
5. What type of music do you like?  
6. What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

**47.2**
2. Which coat  
3. Which film/movie  
4. Which bus

**47.3**
3. Which  
4. What  
5. Which  
6. What  
7. Which

**47.4**
2. How far  
3. How old  
4. How often  
5. How deep  
6. How long

**47.5**
2. How heavy is this box?  
3. How old are you?

**UNIT 48**

**48.1**
2. How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?  
3. How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?  
4. How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

**Example answers:**
2. It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.  
3. It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...  
4. It takes ... to walk from my house to the nearest shop.  
5. It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

**48.2**
2. How long did it take you to walk to the station?  
3. How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?  
4. How long did it take you to learn to ski?  
5. How long did it take them to repair the computer?

**Example answers:**
2. It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.  
3. It took me six months to learn to drive.  
4. It took Mark/them three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.  
5. It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.  
6. It took me ... to ...

**UNIT 49**

**49.1**
2. I don't know where she is.  
3. I don't know how old it is.  
4. I don't know when he'll be here.  
5. I don't know why he was angry.  
6. I don't know how long she has lived here.

**49.2**
2. where Susan works  
3. what Peter said  
4. why he went home early  
5. what time the meeting begins  
6. how the accident happened

**49.3**
2. are you  
3. they are  
4. the museum is  
5. do you want  
6. elephants eat  
7. it is

**49.4**
2. Do you know if/whether they are married?  
3. Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?  
4. Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?  
5. Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

**49.5**
2. Do you know where Paula is?  
3. Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she's working today?  
4. Do you know what time she starts work?  
5. Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?  
6. Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?  
7. Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

**49.6**
**Example answers:**
2. Do you know what time the bus leaves?  
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?  
4. I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.  
5. Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?  
6. Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?
UNIT 50

50.1
2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn’t go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn’t feel very well.
7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they’d be ...
8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she’d just come back ...
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.
10 They said (that) they hadn’t got a key. / They said (that) they didn’t have a key.

50.2
2 She said (that) she wasn’t hungry.
3 He said (that) he needed it.
4 She said (that) she didn’t want to go.
5 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he’d send ...
6 Nicole said (that) he had gone home. / ... he’d gone home.
7 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
8 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3
3 said 7 said
4 told 8 told
5 tell 9 tell
6 say 10 say

UNIT 51

51.1
3 phone
4 phone Paul
5 to phone Paul
6 to phone Paul
7 phone Paul
8 to phone Paul
9 phone Paul
10 phone Paul

51.2
3 get
4 going
5 watch
6 flying
7 listening
8 eat
9 waiting
10 wear
11 doing ... staying

51.3
4 to go 13 having
5 rain 14 to have
6 to leave 15 hear
7 help 16 go
8 studying 17 listening
9 to go 18 to make
10 wearing 19 to know ...
11 to stay 20 use

UNIT 52

52.1
3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work ... talking

52.2
2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 waiting
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

52.3
2 going to museums
3 to go
4 writing / to write letters
5 to go (there)
6 travelling by train
7 walking

52.4
Example answers:
1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don’t like driving.

UNIT 53

53.1
2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don’t want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?
5 I don’t want you to phone me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2
2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her.
5 Paul let me use his phone.
6 I told her not to phone before 8 o’clock.
8 Ann’s mother taught her to play the piano.

53.3
2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make (or to get)

UNIT 54

54.1
2-4
I went to the café to meet a friend.
I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.
54.2
2 to read the newspaper
3 to open this door
4 to get some fresh air
5 to wake him up
6 to see who it was

54.3
Example answers:
2 to talk to you now
3 to tell her about the party
4 to do some shopping
5 to buy a car

54.4
2 to 7 to
3 to 8 to
4 for 9 for
5 to 10 for
6 for 11 to ... for

54.5
2 for the film to begin
3 for it to arrive
4 for you to tell me

UNIT 55
55.1
3 to
4 to
5 – (no preposition)
6 for
7 to
8 on ... to
9 for
10 on
11 to
12 – (no preposition)
13 on
14 for
15 on

55.2
2 went fishing
3 goes swimming
4 going skiing
5 go shopping
6 went jogging

55.3
2 to university
3 shopping
4 to sleep
5 home
6 skiing
7 riding
8 for a walk
9 on holiday ... to Portugal

UNIT 56
56.1
2 get your jacket
3 get a doctor
4 get a taxi
5 get the job
6 get some milk
7 get a ticket
8 get a good salary
9 get a lot of rain
10 get a new computer

56.2
2 getting dark
3 getting married
4 getting ready
5 getting late

56.3
2 get wet
3 got married
4 get angry
5 got lost
6 get old
7 got better

56.4
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

56.5
2 got off
3 got out of
4 got on

UNIT 57
57.1
2 do 7 done
3 make 8 make
4 made 9 making
5 did 10 do
6 do 11 doing

57.2
2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
3 He's/He is doing the shopping. or He is shopping.
4 She's/She is making a jacket.
5 They're/They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
6 He's/He is making the/this bed.

58.1
3 He hasn't got / He doesn't have
4 Gary had
5 Have you got / Do you have
6 we didn't have
7 She hasn't got / She doesn't have
8 Did you have

58.2
2 She's/She is having a cup of tea.
3 He's/He is having a rest.
4 They're/They are having a good time.
5 They're/They are having dinner.
6 He's/He is having a bath.

58.3
3 Have a nice/good trip!
4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
5 Did you have a nice/good game of tennis?
6 Have a nice/good time! or Have a nice/good evening! or Have fun!
7 Did you have a nice/good holiday?

58.4
2 have something to eat
3 had a glass of water
4 have a walk
5 had an accident
6 have a look
UNIT 59
59.1
2 him 5 him
3 them 6 them
4 her 7 her
59.2
2 I ... them 6 she ... them
3 he ... her 7 they ... me
4 they ... us 8 she ... you
5 we ... him
59.3
2 I like him.
3 I don't like her.
4 Do you like them?
5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?
59.4
2 him 8 them
3 them 9 me
4 they 10 her
5 us 11 them
6 it 12 he ... it
7 She
59.5
2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60
60.1
2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands
5 their hands
6 your hands
60.2
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Jane lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.
60.3
2 their 6 their
3 his 7 her
4 his 8 their
5 her

UNIT 61
61.1
2 mine 6 yours
3 ours 7 mine
4 hers 8 his
5 theirs
61.2
2 yours
3 my ... Mine
4 Yours ... mine
5 her
6 My ... hers
7 their
8 Ours
61.3
3 of hers
4 friends of ours
5 friend of mine
6 friend of his
7 friends of yours
61.4
2 Whose camera is this?
   It's her.
3 Whose gloves are these?
   They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this?
   It's him.
5 Whose money is this?
   It's yours.
6 Whose books are these?
   They're ours.

UNIT 62
62.1
2 Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name.
3 Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names.
4 Yes, I know you, but I can't remember your name.
62.2
2 He invited us to stay with him at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with them at their house.
4 I invited them to stay with me at my house.
5 She invited us to stay with her at her house.
6 Did you invite him to stay with you at your house?
62.3
2 I gave her my address, and she gave me hers.
3 He gave me his address, and I gave him mine.
4 We gave them our address, and they gave us theirs.
5 She gave him her address, and he gave her his.
6 You gave us your address, and we gave you ours.
7 They gave you their address, and you gave them yours.
62.4
2 them 6 us
3 him 7 her
4 our 8 their
5 yours 9 mine

UNIT 63
63.1
2 myself 6 himself
3 herself 7 yourself
4 themselves 8 yourselves
5 myself
63.2
2 When I saw him, he was by himself.
3 Don't go out by yourself.
4 I went to the cinema by myself.
5 My sister lives by herself.
6 Many people live by themselves.
Key to Exercises

63.3
2 They can't see each other.
3 They phone each other a lot.
4 They don't know each other.
5 They're sitting next to each other.
6 They gave each other presents/ a present.

63.4
3 to each other
4 yourselves
5 us
6 ourselves
7 each other
8 ourselves
9 them
10 themselves

UNIT 64
64.1
3 Helen is Brian's wife.
4 James is Sarah's brother.
5 James is Daniel's uncle.
6 Sarah is Paul's wife.
7 Helen is Daniel's grandmother.
8 Sarah is James's sister.
9 Paul is Sarah's husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's father.
11 Daniel is James's nephew.

64.2
2 Andy's
3 Dave's
4 Alice's
5 Jane's

64.3
2 OK
3 Simon's phone number
4 My brother's job
5 OK
6 OK
7 OK
8 Paula's favourite colour
9 your mother's birthday
10 My parents' house
11 OK
12 OK
13 Silvia's party
14 OK

UNIT 65
65.1
2 a
3 a
4 an
5 a
6 a
7 a
8 a
9 a
10 a

65.2
2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool
5 a mountain
6 a planet

65.3
2 He's a shop assistant.
3 She's an architect.
4 He's a taxi driver.
5 He's an electrician.
6 She's a photographer.
7 She's a nurse.
8 I'm a/an...

65.4
2-8

UNIT 66
66.1
2 boats
3 women
4 cities
5 umbrellas
6 addresses
7 knives
8 sandwiches
9 families
10 feet
11 holidays
12 potatoes

66.2
2 teeth
3 people
4 leaves
5 children

66.3
3 with a lot of beautiful trees.
4 with two men.
5 OK
6 three children.
7 Most of my friends are students.
8 He put on his pyjamas...
9 OK
10 Do you know many people...
11 I like your trousers.
12 ... full of tourists.
13 OK
14 These scissors aren't ...

66.4
2 are
3 don't
4 watch
5 were
6 live

UNIT 67
67.1
3 a jug
4 water
5 toothpaste
6 a toothbrush
7 an egg
8 money
9 a wallet
10 sand
11 a bucket
12 an envelope

67.2
3 ... a hat.
4 ... a job?
5 OK
6 ... an apple...
7 ... a party...
8 ... a wonderful thing.
9 ... an island.
10 ... a key.
11 OK
12 ... a good idea.
13 ... a car?
14 ... a cup of coffee?
15 OK
16 ... an umbrella.

67.3
2 a piece of wood
3 a glass of water
4 a bar of chocolate
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

UNIT 68
68.1
2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen.
3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (or a loaf of bread).
4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.

68.2
2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
3 Would you like a biscuit?
4 Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5 Would you like a chocolate?
6 Would you like some cake? (or ... a piece of cake?)

68.3
2 some ... some
3 some
4 a ... some
5 an ... some
6 a ... a ... some
7 some
8 some
9 some ... a

68.4
2 eyes
3 hair
4 information
5 chairs
6 furniture
7 job
8 wonderful weather

UNIT 69
69.1
3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the ... the
7 a ... a
8 a ... a
9 ... a student ... a journalist ... an apartment near the college ... The apartment is ...
10 ... two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a job ...

69.2
2 the airport
3 a cup
4 a nice picture
5 the dictionary
6 the floor

69.3
2 ... send me a postcard.
3 What is the name of ...
4 ... a very big country.
5 What is the largest ...
6 ... the colour of the carpet.
7 ... a headache.
8 ... an old house near the station.
9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

UNIT 70
70.1
3 ... the second floor.
4 ... the moon?
5 ... the best hotel in this town?
6 OK
7 ... the city centre.
8 ... the end of May.
9 OK
10 ... the first time I met her.
11 OK
12 The Internet is a good way of getting information.
13 OK
14 ... on the top shelf on the right.
15 ... in the country about ten miles from the nearest town.

70.2
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same colour
5 the same problem

70.3
2 the guitar
3 breakfast
4 television/TV
5 the sea
6 the bottom

70.4
2 the name
3 The sky
4 television
5 the police
6 the capital
7 lunch
8 the middle

UNIT 71
71.1
2 the cinema
3 hospital
4 the airport
5 home
6 prison

71.2
3 school
4 the station
5 home
6 bed
7 the post office

71.3
2 the cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to the dentist
6 go to university/collage
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

71.4
3 the doctor
4 OK
5 OK
6 OK
7 the bank
8 OK
9 OK
10 the city centre
11 the station
12 OK
13 OK
14 OK
15 the theatre

UNIT 72
72.1
Example answers:
2 I don't like dogs.
3 I hate museums.
4 I love big cities.
5 Tennis is all right.
6 I love chocolate.
7 I don't like computer games.
8 I hate parties.

72.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I'm interested in sport.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.
UNIT 74

74.1
2 that house
3 these postcards
4 those birds
5 this seat
6 These plates

74.2
2 Is that your umbrella?
3 Is this your book?
4 Are those your books?
5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
6 Are these your keys?
7 Are those your keys?
8 Is this your watch?
9 Are those your glasses?
10 Are these your gloves?

74.3
2 that's
3 This is
4 That's
5 that

UNIT 75

75.1
2 I don't need one
3 I'm going to get one
4 I haven't got one
5 I've just had one
6 There's one in Mill Road

75.2
2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

75.3
2 Which ones?
3 Which one?
4 Which one?
5 Which one?
6 Which one?
7 Which one?
8 Which one?

UNIT 77

77.1
2 There are no shops near here.
3 Carla has got no free time.
4 There is no light in this room.
5 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
6 There aren't any buses today.
7 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

UNIT 76

76.1
2 some
3 any
4 any
5 any
6 some
7 any

76.2
2 some questions
3 any photographs
4 any foreign languages
5 some friends
6 some milk
7 any batteries
8 some fresh air
9 some cheese
10 any help

76.3
3 I've got some / I have some
4 I haven't got any / I don't have any
5 I didn't buy any
6 I bought some
7 I didn't make any

UNIT 72

72.3
3 friends
4 parties
5 The shops
6 the milk
7 milk
8 basketball
9 computers
10 The water
11 cold water
12 the salt
13 the people
14 Vegetables
15 The houses
16 the words
17 photographs
18 the photographs
19 English ... international business
20 Money ... happiness

UNIT 73

73.1
3 Sweden
4 The Amazon
5 Asia
6 The Pacific
7 The Rhine
8 Kenya
9 The United States
10 The Andes
11 Bangkok
12 The Alps
13 The Red Sea
14 Jamaica
15 The Bahamas

73.2
3 OK
4 the Philippines
5 the south of France
6 the Regal Cinema
7 OK
8 the Museum of Art
9 OK
10 Belgium is smaller than the Netherlands.
11 the Mississippi ... the Nile
12 the National Gallery
13 the Park Hotel in Hudson Road
14 OK
15 The Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 OK
17 the United States
18 the west of Ireland
19 OK
20 The Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 77
UNIT 77

77.2
2 any 8 no
3 any 9 any
4 no 10 no
5 any 11 None
6 no 12 any
7 any

77.3
2 no money
3 any questions
4 no friends
5 no difference
6 any furniture
7 no answer
8 any heating
9 no queue

77.4
Example answers:
2 Three.
3 Two cups.
4 None.
5 None.

UNIT 78

78.1
2 There's nobody in the office.
3 I've got nothing to do.
4 There's nothing on TV.
5 There was no-one at home.
6 We found nothing.

78.2
2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.
3 I haven't got anything to read.
4 I haven't got anyone to help me.
5 She didn't hear anything.
6 We haven't got anything for dinner.

78.3
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
5a Nobody/No-one.
6a Nothing.
7a Nothing.
8a Nobody/No-one.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
5b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
6b I didn't buy anything.
7b Nothing happened.

8b Nobody/No-one was late.

78.4
3 anything
4 Nobody/No-one
5 Nothing
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 nothing
9 anything
10 anything
11 nobody/no-one
12 anything
13 Nothing
14 Nobody/No-one ... anybody/anyone

UNIT 79

79.1
2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone

79.2
2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
2b I'm not going anywhere.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3
3 anything
4 anything
5 somebody/someone
6 something
7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/no-one
8 anything
9 Nobody/No-one
10 anybody/anyone
11 Nothing
12 anywhere
13 somewhere
14 anything
15 anybody/anyone

79.4
2 anything to eat
3 nothing to do
4 anywhere to sit
5 something to drink
6 nowhere to park
7 something to read
8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 80

80.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word

80.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day

80.3
2 every 6 all
3 all 7 every
4 all 8 all
5 Every 9 every

80.4
2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything

80.5
2 is 6 was
3 has 7 makes
4 likes 8 Is ... Does
5 has

UNIT 81

81.1
3 Some 10 Most
4 Most of 11 most of
5 most 12 Some
6 any of 13 All or All of
7 all or all of 14 some of
8 None of 15 most of
9 any of

81.2
2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.

81.3
3 Some people ...
4 Some of the questions ...
or Some questions ...
5 OK
6 All insects ...
7 OK (or ... all of these books)
8 Most of the students ... or Most students ...
9 OK
10 ... most of the night

UNIT 82
82.1
3 Both 9 Neither
4 Neither 10 either of
5 Neither 11 Both
6 both 12 neither of
7 Either 13 Both
8 neither of 14 either of

82.2
2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat. or Neither of them is wearing ...
4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...
5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer is right.

82.3
3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
5 Both of them live in London.
6 Both of them like cooking.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them read newspapers.
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83
83.1
2 many 8 many
3 much 9 How many
4 many 10 How much
5 many 11 How much
6 much 12 How many
7 much

83.2
2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

83.3
2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

83.4
3 a lot of snow
4 OK
5 a lot of money
6 OK
7 OK
8 a lot

83.5
3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 He doesn’t use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
5 He doesn’t go out much. (or ... a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 85
85.1
2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful holiday.
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2
2 black clouds
3 long holiday
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

85.3
2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes horrible.

85.4
2 It doesn’t look new.
3 You don’t sound American.
4 I don’t feel cold.
5 They don’t look heavy.
6 Maybe, but it doesn’t taste good.

UNIT 86
86.1
2 badly 5 fast
3 quietly 6 dangerously
4 angrily

86.2
2 work hard
3 sleep well
4 win easily
5 Think carefully
6 know her very well
7 explain things very clearly/well
8 Come quickly

86.3
2 angry 8 quiet
3 slowly 9 badly
4 slow 10 nice (See Unit 85C.)
5 careful
6 hard 11 quickly
7 suddenly

86.4
2 well 5 well
3 good 6 good ... good
4 well
UNIT 91

91.1
2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind

91.2
2 The car isn't big enough.
3 His legs aren't long enough.
4 He isn't strong enough.

91.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough space
8 tired enough
9 practise enough

91.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to go
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

UNIT 92

92.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

92.2
3 enough 8 enough
4 too many 9 too
5 too 10 too many
6 enough 11 too much
7 too much

92.3
3 It's too far.
4 It's too expensive.
5 It isn't/It's not big enough.
6 It was too difficult.
7 It isn't good enough.
8 I'm too busy.
9 It was too long.

92.4
2 too early to go to bed
3 too young to get married
4 too dangerous to go out at night
5 too late to phone Sue (now)
6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.
5 OK
6 Jane bought a present for her friend. Or Jane bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 OK
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.2
2 I bought a new computer last week.
3 Paul finished his work quickly.
4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6 Do you know London well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.

UNIT 94

94.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He's/He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He rarely goes swimming.
6 He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

94.2
2 Susan is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4 Sarah has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn't usually late.
7 I don't often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
11 They always stay in the same hotel.
12 Jane doesn’t usually work on Saturdays.
13 Is Tina already here?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15 I can never remember his name.

94.3
2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I’m also hungry.
4 Yes, and I’ve also been to Ireland.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4
1 They both play football. They’re/They are both students.
   They’ve both got cars. / They both have cars.
2 They’re/They are all married.
   They were all born in England.
   They all live in New York.

UNIT 95

95.1
2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have …
5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2
2 He was looking for a job. He’s/He is still looking (for a job).
   He hasn’t found a job yet.
3 She was asleep.
   She’s/She is still asleep.
   She hasn’t woken up yet. / She isn’t awake yet. or
   She hasn’t got up yet. / She isn’t up yet.

UNIT 96

96.1
2 He gave it to Gary.
3 He gave them to Sarah.
4 He gave it to his sister.
5 He gave them to Robert.
6 He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2
2 I gave Joanna a plant.
3 I gave Richard a tie.
4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
6 I gave Kevin a pen.

96.3
2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
3 Can you give me your address?
4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5 Can you send me some information?
6 Can you show me the letter?
7 Can you get me some stamps?

UNIT 97

97.1
3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn’t have your number.
5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2
Example answers:
2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn’t eat anything. / so he didn’t want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

UNIT 98

98.1
2 When I’m tired, I like to watch TV.
3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.
Key to Exercises

4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2
2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn’t believe me

98.3
2 I finish
3 it’s
4 I’ll be ... she leaves
5 stops
6 We’ll come ... we’re
7 I come ... I’ll bring
8 I’m
9 I’ll give ... I go
10 I’ll tell ... I’m

98.4
Example answers:
2 you finish your work
3 I’m going to buy a motorbike
4 you get ready
5 I won’t have much free time
6 I come back

UNIT 99

99.1
2 If you pass the exam, you’ll get a certificate.
3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 If you don’t want this magazine, I’ll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you’re busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you’re hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

99.2
2 I give
3 is
4 I’ll call
5 I’ll be ... get
6 Will you go ... they invite

99.3
Example answers:
3 you’re busy
4 you’ll feel better in the morning.
5 you’re not watching it.
6 ... she doesn’t study.
7 ... I’ll go and see Chris.
8 ... the weather is good.
9 ... it rains today.

UNIT 100

100.1
3 wanted
4 had
5 were/was
6 didn’t enjoy
7 could
8 tried
9 didn’t have

100.2
3 ... go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had
6 you won.
7 I wouldn’t stay
8 we lived
9 It would be
10 the salary was/were
11 I wouldn’t know
12 would you change

100.3
2 I’d watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall.
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was/ were the same.
6 I’d be bored / I would be bored.
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would/could buy a bigger house

100.4
Example answers:
2 I’d go to Antarctica
3 I didn’t have any friends
4 I’d buy a house if I had enough money.
5 I’d try and help.
6 there were no guns.

UNIT 101

101.1
2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn’t tell the truth.

101.2
2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn’t very friendly.

101.3
2 who 6 which
3 which 7 who
4 which 8 who
5 who 9 which

that is also correct in all these sentences.

101.4
3 ... a machine that/which makes coffee.
4 OK (which is also correct)
5 ... people who/that never stop talking.
6 OK (who is also correct)
7 OK (that is also correct)
8 ... the sentences that/which are wrong.
9 ... a car that/which cost £40,000.
UNIT 102
102.1
1. I've lost the pen you gave me.
2. I don't like the jacket Sue is wearing.
3. Where are the flowers I gave you?
4. I didn't believe the story he told us.
5. How much were the oranges you bought?

102.2
1. The meal you cooked was excellent.
2. The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
3. The people we invited to dinner didn't come.
4. The flowers you gave me are lovely.
5. I've lived in England for six years.
6. Adam has been a journalist for ....... years.

UNIT 103

103.1
1. at
2. on
3. in
4. at
5. on
6. in
7. on
8. on
9. in
10. on

103.2
1. on
2. at
3. on
4. in
5. in

103.3
on Friday
on Monday
at 4 o'clock on Thursday / on Thursday at 4 o'clock
on Saturday evening
at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

UNIT 104

104.1
2. Alex lived in Canada until 1999.
3. Alex has lived in England since 1999.
5. Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2003.
7. Clare has worked in a restaurant since 2001.
8. Adam was a teacher from 1992 to 1998.
9. Adam has been a journalist since 1998.
10. Alex has lived in England for ....... years.
11. Karen has lived in Switzerland for ....... years.
12. Clare worked in a hotel for three years.
13. Clare has worked in a restaurant for ....... years.

UNIT 105

105.1
2. after lunch
3. before the end
4. during the course
5. before they went to Australia
6. during the night
7. while you are waiting
8. after the concert

UNIT 106

106.1
2. in the box.
3. on the box.
4. on the wall.
5. at the bus stop.
6. in the field.
7. on the balcony.
Key to Exercises

8 In the pool.
9 At the window.
10 On the ceiling.
11 On the table.
12 At the table.

106.2
2 in
3 on
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 at
15 on the wall in the living room

UNIT 107

107.1
2 At the airport.
3 In bed.
4 On a ship.
5 In the sky.
6 At a party.
7 At the doctor's.
8 On the second floor.
9 At work.
10 On a plane.
11 In a taxi.
12 At a wedding.

107.2
2 in 9 in
3 in 10 in
4 at 11 on
5 at 12 on
6 in 13 at
7 at 14 in
8 at 15 on

UNIT 108

108.1
2 to 6 to
3 in 7 to
4 to 8 in
5 in

108.2
3 to
4 to
5 at home ... to work
6 at
7 — (already complete)
8 to
9 at
10 at a restaurant ... to the hotel

108.3
2 to
3 to
4 in
5 to
6 to
7 at
8 to
9 to
10 at
11 at
12 to Maria's house ... at home
13 — (already complete)
14 meet at the party ... go to the party

108.4
1 to
2 — (already complete)
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 — (already complete)

108.5
Example answers:
2 to work
3 at work
4 to Canada
5 to parties
6 at a friend's house

UNIT 109

109.1
2 next to / beside / by
3 in front of
4 between
5 next to / beside / by
6 in front of
7 behind
8 on the left
9 in the middle

109.2
2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to / beside
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to / beside
11 opposite
12 on

109.3
2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. or Paul's office is opposite the theatre. or The theatre is opposite ...
4 The bank/bookshop/supermarket is next to ...
5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.
6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 110

110.1
2 Go under the bridge.
3 Go up the hill.
4 Go down the steps.
5 Go along this street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go out of the hotel.
9 Go over the bridge.
10 Go through the park.

110.2
2 off
3 over
4 out of
5 across
6 round/around
7 through
8 on
9 round/around
10 into the house through a window

110.3
1 out of
2 round/around
3 in
4 from here to the airport
5 round/around
6 on/over
7 over
8 out of

UNIT 111

111.1
2 on time
3 on holiday
4 on the phone
5 on television
Key to Exercises

UNIT 112

112.1
2 in
3 to
4 at
5 with
6 of
7 from/to (You can also say different than ...)
8 in
9 for
10 about
11 of
12 for/about getting angry with you

112.2
2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
7 from/to

112.3
2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for/about waking
6 Thank you for waiting.

112.4
2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

112.5
Example answers:
2 I'm afraid of the dark.
3 I'm not very good at drawing.
4 I'm not interested in cars.
5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 113

113.1
2 to 5 at
3 for 6 for
4 to

113.2
2 to
3 to
4 for
5 to
6 of/about
7 for
8 on
9 to
10 for
11 to
12 — (already complete)
13 to
14 on
t
15 of/about

113.3
1 at 4 after
2, after 5 at
3 for 6 for

113.4
Example answers:
3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends on what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 114

114.1
2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

114.2
2 away
3 round/around
4 going out ... be back
5 down
6 over

7 back
8 in
9 up
10 going away ... coming back

114.3
2 Hold on
3 slowed down
4 takes off
5 getting on
6 speak up
7 broken down
8 fall over / fall down
9 carry on
10 gave up
11 went off

UNIT 115

115.1
2 She took off her hat. or
She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. or
He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. or
She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. or
He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. or
She turned the tap off.

115.2
2 He put his jacket on.
He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses.
She took them off.
4 I picked the phone up.
I picked it up.
5 They gave the key back.
They gave it back.
6 We turned off the lights.
We turned them off.

115.3
2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 switched it off
5 bring them back

115.4
3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me round
8 gave it up or gave up (without it)
9 fill it in
10 put your cigarette out
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Kate is a doctor.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>She's / She is having a shower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sam doesn't want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Are you cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>She's / She is a student.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are you married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>He's / He is having a shower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Sonia is 32 years old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Are you cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>He's / He is having a shower.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>The children are asleep.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Where are the children playing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Does Helen live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Does Julia do ... She works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are you married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Sonja is 32 years old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Are you cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>We go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3</th>
<th>Gary isn't hungry.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Do you want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Does Helen live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are you cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>We go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>We go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4</th>
<th>The books aren't on the table.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Does Helen live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are you cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>She writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>They're watching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>He's talking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Do you usually have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5</th>
<th>The hotel is near the station.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>She hasn't got a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>She goes out a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>She doesn't like London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>She isn't / She's not interested in sport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>She writes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6</th>
<th>The bus isn't full.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>She's / She is a student.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>She goes out a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>She doesn't like London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>She likes dancing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7</th>
<th>The children are asleep.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>She has got a lot of friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>She doesn't like London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>She likes dancing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8</th>
<th>Gary isn't hungry.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Is he called?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Who's his name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>What's his job?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>What's he doing?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9</th>
<th>The books aren't on the table.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Have you got / Do you have any children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>How old is she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Has she got any children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>She is having a shower.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10</th>
<th>The bus isn't full.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Have you got / Do you have any children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>How old is she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Has she got any children?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>The children are asleep.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>He's / He is having a shower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sam doesn't want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Are you cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>She's / She is a student.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11</th>
<th>The bus isn't full.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Have you got / Do you have any children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>How old is she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Has she got any children?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28
2 B  8 B
3 A  9 B
4 C  10 A
5 B  11 B
6 C  12 C
7 C

29
1 I stayed
did you do
I watched
Are you going
I'm going
are you going to see
I don't know. I haven't
decided
2 have you been
We arrived
are you staying / are you
going to stay
do you like
we're having
3 I've just remembered –
Karen phoned
She always phones ... Did
she leave
she wants
I'll phone ... Do you
know
I'll get
4 I'm going ... Do you
want
are you going
Have you ever eaten
I've been ... I went
5 I've lost ... Have you seen
You were wearing ... I
came
I'm not wearing
Have you looked / Did you
look
I'll go

30
1 we met
2 we sat / we were sitting
3 We didn't know
4 we became
5 we liked
6 we spent
7 We left
8 we meet
9 has been
10 she's working
11 She's coming
12 she comes
13 we'll have / we're going to
have
14 It will be

31
2 we're staying
3 we enjoyed
4 We watched
5 slept
6 I don't sleep
7 we're not doing / we're
not going to do
8 we're going
9 to see
10 We haven't decided
11 wants
12 to go
13 I'll send
14 you're having
15 are working / have been
working
16 he had
17 he needs
18 We've been
19 We got
20 seeing
21 I liked
22 we went
23 we left
24 had
25 he wasn't injured
26 was damaged
27 We've changed / We
changed
28 we're leaving
29 We're staying / We're
going to stay / We'll stay
30 flying
31 That will be / That's going
to be
32 finished
33 I'll let
34 we get
35 are looking
36 We're going
37 we'll send

32
2 A  11 B
3 B  12 A
4 C  13 C
5 B  14 B
6 C  15 C
7 B  16 A
8 A  17 C
9 C  18 B
10 A

33
2 a car
3 the fridge
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the cinema
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 computers
10 the same

34
4 a horse
5 The sky
6 a tourist
7 for lunch (-)
8 the first President of the
United States
9 a watch
10 remember names (-)
11 the next train
12 sends emails (-)
13 the garden
14 the Majestic Hotel
15 ill last week (-) ... to
work (-)
16 the highest mountain in
the world
17 to the radio ... having
breakfast (-)
18 like sport (-) ... is
basketball (-)
19 a doctor ... an art teacher
20 the second floor ... the
top of the stairs ... on
the right
21 After dinner (-) ... 
watched television (-)
22 a wonderful holiday in the
south of France (-)

35
2 in 12 at
3 on 13 at
4 at 14 in
5 on 15 at
6 in 16 on
7 since 17 by
8 on 18 for ... on
9 by 19 to ... in
10 in 20 at ... in
11 for
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6.6, 6.7, 6.8, 6.9</td>
<td>C, D, A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, 7.6, 7.7, 7.8, 7.9, 7.10, 7.11, 7.12</td>
<td>C, D, A, C, D, E, B, D, D, C, C, A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5</td>
<td>B, E, A, A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, 10.9, 10.10, 10.11, 10.12</td>
<td>D, D, A, B, D, D, A, C, C, E, C, B, D, A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reported speech</td>
<td>11.1, 11.2</td>
<td>E, A, B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>12.1, 12.2, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 12.6</td>
<td>B, D, B, C, B, C, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go, get, do, make and have</td>
<td>13.1, 13.2, 13.3, 13.4, 13.5, 13.6</td>
<td>A, D, C, D, A, D, B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A and the</td>
<td>15.1, 15.2, 15.3, 15.4, 15.5, 15.6, 15.7, 15.8, 15.9, 15.10, 15.11, 15.12, 15.13, 15.14</td>
<td>C, B, A, B, C, B, D, C, C, B, E, D, C, B, A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key to Study Guide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjectives and adverbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.7</td>
<td>A, C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.10</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.11</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.12</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.13</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.14</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conjunctions and clauses</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>A, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>B, C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>A, B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>B, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.9</td>
<td>A, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>C, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>A, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prepositions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.10</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.11</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.12</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.13</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.14</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.15</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.16</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.17</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.18</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.19</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.20</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phrasal verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>A, B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

each other 63D
either
either and too 42A
either (if) 82
embedded questions (Do you know what...? etc.) 49
end (at the end of) 103B, 106B
enjoy
enjoy -ing 52B
enjoy myself/yourself etc. 63A
enough 91
enough and too 92D
ever
Have you ever...? 17
superlative + ever 90E
word order 94
ever 80
everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere 80C
expect 52A, 53B
far
How far is it? 39A, 47D
far = further 87B
fast 86C
fed up (with) 112A
efew / a few 84
finish (finish -ing) 52B
for
for ten minutes / for three years etc. 19, 104D
for and to 54B
go for a walk etc. 55C
for and during 108C
from 104A,110
front (in front of) 109A-B
full (of) 112A
further 87B
future 25-2b
I'm working tomorrow (present continuous) 25
The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 25C
(I'm) going to (do something) 26
will 27-28
shall 27D, 28C
future after when/before/while etc. 98B
future after if 99B
general names with and without the 73
gerund see -ing
get 56
get to (a place) 56C, 108C
go on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114, Appendix 6
give
give something to somebody / give somebody something 96
give up / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 6-7
go 55
 go-ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
go home / go to work / go to the drama 71
go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114
going to (I'm going to do something) 26
gone and been 17C
good
very good and well 86D
good at 112A
not gone yet etc. 63A
get
past of get 11C, 56
have/has got 9, 58A
had
past of have 11C
had to 33B
He said he had (done something) 50, Appendix 1.1
happen (to) 113A
hard 86C
has seen have 52C-D
have 9, 58
have got / has got 9, 58A
have done / have been etc. (present perfect) 15-18, 23C
have to 33
have a nice time / have fun etc. 35A
there has / have been 38B
have breakfast / have a shower etc. 58B
her 59-60, 62
hers 61-62
herself 63
him 59, 62
herself 63
his 60-62
holiday (on holiday) 55B, 111A
home 55A, 71A, 108B
get home 56C, 108C
how 47
How long have you...? (present perfect) 18
How long? / How old? / How far? etc. 47D
How long does it take? 48
How much? / How many? 83A
I/you/he/she etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
If 99-100
if we go / if you see etc. 99
if and when 99C
if I had / if we went 100
Do you know if...? +9C
imperative (do this / don't do that etc.) 35
in
in April / in summer etc. 103
in a room / in hospital etc. 106-107
in five minutes / in three years etc. 103E
in and to 108
put something in 110
go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 114-115, Appendix 7
infinitive (do/see/play etc.)
infinitive (do/see etc.) and to + infinitive (to do / to see etc.) 51, 53
can/may/shall etc. + infinitive 51A
verbs + to + infinitive (I want to go etc.) 51B, 52-53
infinitive and -ing (do/doing etc.) 51-52
I went to the shop to buy... (infinitive for purpose) 54
infinitive and for... 54B
adjective + infinitive (it's easy to... ) 39B
something to eat / nowhere to go etc. 79D
- ing (doing/playing/going etc.)
and is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 23A, 25, 51C
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
- ing and infinitive (do/doing etc.) 51-52
verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.) 52B-C
- ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
prepositions + -ing 108D, 112B
interested (in) 112A
into 110
irregular verbs 11C, 24B.
Appendix 2-3
is see am/is/are
it 39, 59B
it is and there is 37B, 39A
it's 60
just
just + present perfect 16A
word order 94
kind (kind to somebody / kind of somebody) 112A
know (Do you know where...?) 49
learn (learn to ...) 52A
left (for the left) 109A
lend (lend something to somebody) 96
less 88C
let 53D
let's (let's go / let's dance etc.) 35C, 53D
like (What is it like?) 46B
like (verb) 34, 52D, 53A
like to do + present simple 3C
like to + like -ing 52C
listen (to) 113A
little / a little 84
look
look + adjective (look tired etc.) 85C
look at/for/after 113B
lot (a lot of ...) 83
love 52C–D
make 57
make somebody do something 53D
make up 57
many
many and much 83
not as many (as) 89B
too many 92C
married
married to 112A
get married 56B
may 29D
me/you/him etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
middle (in the middle of) 107A, 109A
might 29
mind (I don't mind -ing) 52B
mine/yours/hers etc. (possessive pronouns) 61–62
modal verbs (will/can/might etc.) 27–34, 51A
more 87C, 88
most
most (of) 81
the most expensive / the most difficult etc. 90
much
much and many 83
much bigger / much more expensive 88D
not as much (as) 89B
too much 92C
must 31
mustn't 31C
must and should 32B
must and have to 33D
my/your/his etc. (possessive adjectives) 60, 62
myself/yourself etc. (reflexive pronouns) 63
need
don't need to 31D
need to ... 52A
negatives 43
negative questions 44C
so and none 77
not + any 77–78
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I etc. 42B
neither (of) 82
never
never + present simple 5C
never + present perfect 17B
word order 94
next to 109A
nice (nice to somebody / nice of somebody) 112A
no (no money / no friends etc.) 77A–B, 81B
nobody/no one/nothing 78–79
no-one and none 77C
none 77B–C, 81B–C
nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.) 42B
nouns (countable and uncountable) 67–68
nowhere 79

of
the roof of the building etc. 64C
the ... of ... 73B
off 110
got off / turn off etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6
offer (to do something) 52A
often
often + present simple 5C
word order 94
on
on Monday / on 25 April etc. 103
on the table / on the wall 106–107
on the left/right 109A
on holiday / on television etc. 111A
on (holiday / a trip etc.) 55B
got on / put on etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
one/ones 75
opposite 109B
or 97A–B
ought to 32F
our 60, 62
ours 61–62
ourselves 63
out
out of 110
go out / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
over 110
down over / knock over (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
pair (a pair of ...) 66B
passive 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
past simple (was / was doing) and past perfect (has been done) 22
will / can / must (etc.) be done
Appendix 1.2
past participle (cleaned / done / seen etc.) 24A
present perfect (I have cleaned) 15, 23C
passive (the room was cleaned) 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen) 24B, Appendix 2–3
past perfect
He said he had (done something) 50
active and passive Appendix 1.1
past simple (did / done / saw etc.) 11–12
negative (didn't / didn't see etc.) 12, 43B
questions (did / did see etc.) 12, 44B
was / were / was
regular (cleaned) and irregular (saw) 11B–C, Appendix 2–3
past simple + ago 19B
past simple (I did) and present perfect (I have done) 20
past simple (I did) and past continuous (I was doing) 14
past simple passive (the room was cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
if + past simple (if I had / if we went) 100
people 66C–D
personal pronouns (I/me / you etc.) 59, 62
persuade (persuade somebody to ...) 53B
Essential Grammar in Use
With answers and CD-ROM - Third Edition
A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students

Using clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises, this new, full-colour edition of the best-selling Essential Grammar in Use makes learning easy, covering all the areas of grammar that an elementary-level student needs.

- Two-page units with clear explanations on the left page and practice exercises on the right.
- NEW! Study Guide helps you find the most useful language points for you, making this book ideal for self-study.
- NEW! Even more ‘Additional Exercises’ give you extra practice of difficult areas.

The new CD-ROM gives you hundreds of practice exercises, providing further practice for every unit.

- A variety of games and exercises make learning fun.
- Make your own tests: Choose from over 600 grammar questions to test the areas that YOU want to practise.
- Audio recordings provide extra listening and pronunciation practice.
- The built-in dictionary gives you instant definitions of any new vocabulary.
- Interactive speaking exercises provide extra practice at the end of each section.

Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises
Cambridge Essential English Dictionary
English Grammar in Use